

# Level 2 Diploma in Work Based Trees and Timber (0083-71, 72, 73)

September 2021 Version.2.2



## Qualification at a glance

<b>Subject area</b>	<b>Trees and Timber</b>
<b>City &amp; Guilds number</b>	0083 – 71, -72, 73
<b>Age group approved</b>	16-18, 18+, 19+
<b>Entry requirements</b>	Level 2
<b>Assessment</b>	Portfolio
<b>Fast track</b>	Available
<b>Support materials</b>	Candidate logbook
<b>Registration and certification</b>	Consult the Walled Garden/Online Catalogue for last dates

<b>Title and level</b>	<b>GLH</b>	<b>TQT</b>	<b>City &amp; Guilds number</b>	<b>Accreditation number</b>
Level 2 Diploma in Work-based Trees and Timber (Arboriculture)	252	370	0083-71	600/7616/1
Level 2 Diploma in Work-based Trees and Timber (General Woodland and Forestry Treework)	252	370	0083-72	600/7616/1
Level 2 Diploma in Work-based Trees and Timber (Coppicing and Greenwood Trades)	252	370	0083-73	600/7676/1

<b>Title and level</b>	<b>Last Date Registration</b>	<b>Last Date Certification</b>
Level 2 Diploma in Work-based Trees and Timber (Arboriculture)	31/12/2014	31/12/2016
Level 2 Diploma in Work-based Trees and Timber (General Woodland and Forestry Treework)	31/12/2014	31/12/2016
Level 2 Diploma in Work-based Trees and Timber (Coppicing and Greenwood Trades)	31/12/2014	31/12/2016

<b>Version and date</b>	<b>Change detail</b>	<b>Section</b>
1.1 April 2013	Emboldened the title and corrected grammatical errors	First page and Units
2.0 December 2014	Number of credits required from optional group 2 in Level 2 Diploma in Work-based Trees and Timber (General Woodland and Forestry Treework) was amended	Structure
2.1 August 2017	Added TQT and GLH details  Removed QCF	Qualification at a Glance Appendix 2
2.2 September 2021	Added in The Arboricultural Association Technical Guide for accessing trees and rope use.	<b>Unit 421</b> <b>Access a tree using a rope and harness</b>



## Contents

<b>1</b>	<b>Introduction</b>	<b>7</b>
	Relationship to Certificates of Competence	7
	Structure	8
<b>2</b>	<b>Centre requirements</b>	<b>18</b>
	Approval	18
	Resource requirements	18
	Candidate entry requirements	19
<b>3</b>	<b>Delivering the qualification</b>	<b>20</b>
	Initial assessment and induction	20
	Support materials	20
	Recording documents	20
<b>4</b>	<b>Assessment</b>	<b>22</b>
	Assessment of the qualification	22
	Recognition of prior learning (RPL)	22
<b>5</b>	<b>Units</b>	<b>23</b>
<b>Unit 401</b>	<b>Control pests, diseases and disorders</b>	<b>24</b>
<b>Unit 402</b>	<b>Carry out vegetation management in proximity to above ground utilities</b>	<b>28</b>
<b>Unit 403</b>	<b>Construct, maintain and repair stone wall boundaries</b>	<b>32</b>
<b>Unit 404</b>	<b>Construct, maintain and repair fords</b>	<b>36</b>
<b>Unit 405</b>	<b>Control vertebrate pests and predators by shooting</b>	<b>40</b>
<b>Unit 406</b>	<b>Control unwanted vegetation</b>	<b>45</b>
<b>Unit 407</b>	<b>Use of machine powered winches in timber work</b>	<b>49</b>
<b>Unit 408</b>	<b>Prepare sites for planting</b>	<b>57</b>
<b>Unit 409</b>	<b>Prepare and produce charcoal</b>	<b>60</b>
<b>Unit 410</b>	<b>Construct, maintain and repair stone pitched paths</b>	<b>64</b>
<b>Unit 411</b>	<b>Support colleagues undertaking off ground tree related operations</b>	<b>69</b>
<b>Unit 412</b>	<b>Create an open drainage system</b>	<b>74</b>
<b>Unit 413</b>	<b>Process arising from tree work operations</b>	<b>78</b>
<b>Unit 414</b>	<b>Prepare, drive and manoeuvre forwarder</b>	<b>81</b>
<b>Unit 415</b>	<b>Promote responsible public use of the environment</b>	<b>86</b>
<b>Unit 416</b>	<b>Construct, maintain and repair signs/way markers</b>	<b>89</b>
<b>Unit 417</b>	<b>Control vertebrate pest populations using chemical means</b>	<b>93</b>
<b>Unit 418</b>	<b>Process coppice materials and greenwood products</b>	<b>98</b>

Unit 419	Sharpen and maintain edged hand tools	102
Unit 420	Extract wood and wood products using small motorised equipment	106
Unit 421	Access a tree using a rope and harness	109
Unit 422	Maintaining plants outdoors	113
Unit 423	Site and install site furniture and structures	117
Unit 424	Use a powered pole pruner	121
Unit 425	Identify and report the presence of pests, diseases and disorders	127
Unit 426	Construct, maintain and repair simple bridges	130
Unit 427	Carry out maintenance of chainsaw and cutting system	135
Unit 428	Remove branches and breakdown crowns using a chainsaw	141
Unit 429	Cut, process and extract coppice	147
Unit 430	Choker timber for extraction	152
Unit 431	Work with and consult the local community	157
Unit 432	Maintain and repair site furniture and structures	160
Unit 433	Carry out vegetation management in proximity of underground utilities	164
Unit 434	Prepare and operate machinery to process trees	168
Unit 435	Identify tree species and their properties	174
Unit 436	Communicate with the public and others	178
Unit 437	Construct, maintain and repair steps	181
Unit 438	Fell and process trees up to 380mm	186
Unit 439	Control pollution incidents	193
Unit 440	Build and maintain tools and devices to process coppice and greenwood products	197
Unit 441	Maintain coppice health and productivity	201
Unit 442	Treat and dispose of stumps and roots	206
Unit 443	Resolve customer service problems	209
Unit 444	Safe use of a mobile elevated work platform	213
Unit 445	Prepare horse for timber work	216
Unit 446	Plant trees	221
Unit 447	Prepare and operate hand fed machinery to process timber on site	225
Unit 448	Clear sites for planting	231
Unit 449	Prepare a safe working area for tree work operations	234
Unit 450	Cross-cut timber using a chainsaw	237
Unit 451	Maintain open drainage systems	242
Unit 452	Soil amelioration for tree health	246
Unit 453	Take delivery of and store plants and materials	250

Unit 454	Prepare, drive and operate a skidder	254
Unit 455	Operate a grapple loader	259
Unit 456	Monitoring and maintaining health and safety	263
Unit 457	Control vertebrate pests and predators using traps	268
Unit 458	Produce wood fuel in a woodland or forest	273
Unit 459	Prepare and operate machinery to fell trees	277
Unit 460	Construct, maintain and repair stiles	283
Unit 461	Carry out non chemical post-planting protection and maintenance	287
Unit 462	Principles of forest and moorland fire fighting	291
Unit 463	Construct, maintain and repair post and wire fence boundaries	294
Unit 464	Construct, maintain and repair post and rail boundaries	298
Unit 465	Construct, maintain and repair banks	302
Unit 466	Construct, maintain and repair access gates	306
Unit 467	Construct, maintain and repair reinforced paths	310
Unit 468	Construct, maintain and repair flag paths	315
Unit 469	Construct, maintain and repair boardwalks	320
Unit 470	Construct, maintain and repair bark paths	325
Unit 471	Construct, maintain and repair aggregate paths	329
Unit 472	Dispose of stumps and roots	334
Unit 507	Construct a greenwood product to client specification	337
Unit 510	Prepare for and agree emergency tree work operations	341
Unit 511	Lay a hedge	347
Unit 512	Extract timber using a horse	352
Unit 520	Carry out aerial pruning of a tree	356
Unit 525	Sever uprooted or windblown trees using a chainsaw	361
Unit 530	Prepare deer for human consumption	368
Unit 541	Carry out aerial rescue operations	373
Unit 547	Plan, allocate and monitor work of a team	378
Appendix 1	Relationships to other qualifications	381
Appendix 2	Sources of general information	382



# 1 Introduction

This document tells you what you need to do to deliver the qualifications:

Area	Description
Who are the qualifications for?	For candidates who work or want to work as in the trees and timber sector
What do the qualifications cover?	They allow candidates to learn, develop and practise the skills required for employment and/or career progression in the Trees and Timber sector.
Are the qualifications part of a framework or initiative?	They serve as competence qualifications, in the Trees and Timber Apprenticeship framework.
What opportunities for progression are there?	They allow candidates to progress into employment or to the following City & Guilds qualifications: <ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• Level 3 Diploma in Work-based Trees and Timber (0083)</li><li>• Level 2 Forestry and Arboriculture (0077)</li></ul>

## Relationship to Certificates of Competence

Please note that the achievement of any of the chainsaw units will **not** directly lead to certification of competence in the Level 2 Award in Chainsaw and Related Operations. The achieve of the chainsaw units within these qualifications could be used to contribute towards preparative training for the Level 2 Award in Chainsaw and Related Operations.

## Structure

Please note that a **maximum** of **9** credits from level 3 units can be achieved within the level 2 structures.

To achieve **the Level 2 Diploma in Trees and Timber (Arboriculture)**, learners must achieve **23** credits from the mandatory units and a minimum of **14** credits from the optional units in group 1 and learners may achieve a minimum of **1** credit from group 2.

Unit accreditation number	City & Guilds unit number	Unit title	Credit value
<b>Mandatory</b>			
F/504/0596	411	Support colleagues undertaking off ground tree related operations	3
F/504/3658	413	Process arising from tree work operations	1
K/504/0320	427	Carry out maintenance of chainsaw and cutting system	2
L/504/3694	435	Identify tree species and their properties	5
M/504/0321	438	Fell and process trees up to 380mm	3
M/504/3641	439	Control pollution incidents	5
T/504/0319	450	Cross-cut timber using a chainsaw	1
Y/501/6353	456	Monitoring and maintaining health and safety	3
<b>Optional Group 1</b>			
A/504/3660	402	Carry out vegetation management in proximity to above ground utilities	5
D/504/3652	406	Control unwanted vegetation	3
D/504/3683	407	Use of machine powered winches in timber work	5
D/504/3697	408	Prepare sites for planting	2
D/601/1651	409	Prepare and produce charcoal	3
F/504/3689	414	Prepare, drive and manoeuvre forwarder	5
H/504/3667	418	Process coppice materials and greenwood products	4
H/504/3670	419	Sharpen and maintain edged hand tools	2
H/504/3684	420	Extract wood and wood products using small motorised equipment	4



H/504/0316	421	Access a tree using a rope and harness	3
J/504/0597	424	Use a powered pole pruner	2
K/504/0656	428	Remove branches and breakdown crowns using a chainsaw	2
K/504/3671	429	Cut, process and extract coppice	4
K/504/3685	430	Choker timber for extraction	2
L/504/3677	433	Carry out vegetation management in proximity of underground utilities	5
M/504/3669	440	Build and maintain tools and devises to process coppice and greenwood products	3
M/601/0262	442	Treat and dispose of stumps and roots	1
Y/504/4038	444	Safe use of a mobile elevated work platform	2
R/504/3678	445	Prepare horse for timber work	3
R/504/3647	446	Plant trees	2
R/504/3695	448	Clear sites for planting	2
R/504/3700	449	Prepare a safe working area for tree work operations	3
K/504/3654	452	Soil amelioration for tree health	1
T/504/3656	453	Take delivery of and store plants and materials	2
T/504/3690	455	Operate a grapple loader	2
Y/504/3665	458	Produce wood fuel in a woodland or forest	3
K/601/0261	472	Dispose of stumps and roots	1
F/504/0663	510	Prepare for and agree emergency tree work operations	5
F/504/3661	511	Lay a hedge	4
F/504/3675	512	Extract timber using a horse	8
K/504/0317	520	Carry out aerial pruning of a tree	3
L/504/0620	525	Sever uprooted or windblown trees using a chainsaw	4
T/504/0322	541	Carry out aerial rescue operations	3
<b>Optional group 2</b>			
A/502/1514	401	Control pests, diseases and disorders	3
A/600/0821	403	Construct, maintain and repair stone wall boundaries	4
D/502/3966	405	Control vertebrate pests and predators by shooting	6

F/502/3216	410	Construct, maintain and repair stone pitched paths	4
H/502/3161	415	Promote responsible public use of the environment	4
H/502/3967	417	Control vertebrate pest populations using chemical means	6
J/502/1533	422	Maintaining plants outdoors	3
K/502/1511	425	Identify and report the presence of pests, diseases and disorders	3
L/502/3168	431	Work with and consult the local community	3
L/600/2699	436	Communicate with the public and others	3
M/601/1511	443	Resolve customer service problems	6
Y/502/3965	457	Control vertebrate pests and predators using traps	6
Y/600/0826	460	Construct, maintain and repair stiles	4
A/600/0818	463	Construct, maintain and repair post and wire fence boundaries	4
T/600/0817	464	Construct, maintain and repair post and rail boundaries	4
K/600/0815	465	Construct, maintain and repair banks	4
L/600/0824	466	Construct, maintain and repair access gates	4
A/502/3215	467	Construct, maintain and repair reinforced paths	4
T/502/3214	468	Construct, maintain and repair flag paths	4
M/502/3213	469	Construct, maintain and repair boardwalks	4
K/502/3209	470	Construct, maintain and repair bark paths	4
D/502/3207	471	Construct, maintain and repair aggregate paths	4
M/600/1237	530	Prepare deer for human consumption	6
Y/600/9669	547	Plan, allocate and monitor work of a team	5

To achieve the **Level 2 Diploma in Work-based Trees and Timber (General Woodland and Forestry Treework)**, learners must achieve **16** credits from the mandatory units, a minimum of **12** credits from optional

group 1 and learners may achieve a minimum of 9 credit from optional group 2.

### **Mandatory**

K/502/1511	425	Identify and report the presence of pests, diseases and disorders	3
L/504/3694	435	Identify tree species and their properties	5
M/504/3641	439	Control pollution incidents	5
Y/501/6353	456	Monitoring and maintaining health and safety	3

### **Optional group 1**

A/504/3660	402	Carry out vegetation management in proximity to above ground utilities	5
D/504/3652	406	Control unwanted vegetation	3
D/504/3683	407	Use of machine powered winches in timber work	5
D/504/3697	408	Prepare sites for planting	2
D/601/1651	409	Prepare and produce charcoal	3
F/504/0596	411	Support colleagues undertaking off ground tree related operations	3
F/504/3644	412	Create an open drainage system	3
F/504/3658	413	Process arising from tree work operations	1
F/504/3689	414	Prepare, drive and manoeuvre forwarder	5
H/504/3667	418	Process coppice materials and greenwood products	4
H/504/3670	419	Sharpen and maintain edged hand tools	2
H/504/3684	420	Extract wood and wood products using small motorised equipment	4
H/504/0316	421	Access a tree using a rope and harness	3
J/504/0597	424	Use a powered pole pruner	2
K/504/0320	427	Carry out maintenance of chainsaw and cutting system	2
K/504/0656	428	Remove branches and breakdown crowns using a chainsaw	2
K/504/3671	429	Cut, process and extract coppice	4
K/504/3685	430	Choker timber for extraction	2
L/504/3677	433	Carry out vegetation management in proximity of underground utilities	5

L/504/3680	434	Prepare and operate machinery to process trees	5
M/504/0321	438	Fell and process trees up to 380mm	3
M/504/3669	440	Build and maintain tools and devices to process coppice and greenwood products	3
M/504/3672	441	Maintain coppice health and productivity	4
M/601/0262	442	Treat and dispose of stumps and roots	1
Y/504/4038	444	Safe use of a mobile elevated work platform	2
R/504/3678	445	Prepare horse for timber work	3
R/504/3647	446	Plant trees	2
R/504/3681	447	Prepare and operate hand fed machinery to process timber on site	5
R/504/3695	448	Clear sites for planting	2
R/504/3700	449	Prepare a safe working area for tree work operations	3
T/504/0319	450	Cross-cut timber using a chainsaw	1
J/504/3645	451	Maintain open drainage systems	3
K/504/3654	452	Soil amelioration for tree health	1
T/504/3656	453	Take delivery of and store plants and materials	2
T/504/3687	454	Prepare, drive and operate a skidder	5
T/504/3690	455	Operate a grapple loader	2
Y/504/3665	458	Produce wood fuel in a woodland or forest	3
Y/504/3679	459	Prepare and operate machinery to fell trees	5
Y/601/0255	461	Carry out non chemical post-planting protection and maintenance	2
Y/601/0269	462	Principles of forest and moorland fire fighting	2
K/601/0261	472	Dispose of stumps and roots	1
D/504/3666	507	Construct a greenwood product to client specification	8
F/504/0663	510	Prepare for and agree emergency tree work operations	5
F/504/3661	511	Lay a hedge	4
F/504/3675	512	Extract timber using a horse	8

K/504/0317	520	Carry out aerial pruning of a tree	3
L/504/0620	525	Sever uprooted or windblown trees using a chainsaw	4
T/504/0322	541	Carry out aerial rescue operations	3
<b>Optional group 2</b>			
A/502/1514	401	Control pests, diseases and disorders	3
A/600/0821	403	Construct, maintain and repair stone wall boundaries	4
D/502/3224	404	Construct, maintain and repair fords	3
D/502/3966	405	Control vertebrate pests and predators by shooting	6
F/502/3216	410	Construct, maintain and repair stone pitched paths	4
H/502/3161	415	Promote responsible public use of the environment	4
H/502/3225	416	Construct, maintain and repair signs/way markers	3
H/502/3967	417	Control vertebrate pest populations using chemical means	6
J/502/1533	422	Maintaining plants outdoors	3
J/502/3217	423	Site and install site furniture and structures	2
K/502/3226	426	Construct, maintain and repair simple bridges	3
L/502/3168	431	Work with and consult the local community	3
L/502/3218	432	Maintain and repair site furniture and structures	3
L/600/2699	436	Communicate with the public and others	3
M/502/3227	437	Construct, maintain and repair steps	3
M/601/1511	443	Resolve customer service problems	6
Y/502/3965	457	Control vertebrate pests and predators using traps	6
Y/600/0826	460	Construct, maintain and repair stiles	4
A/600/0818	463	Construct, maintain and repair post and wire fence boundaries	4
T/600/0817	464	Construct, maintain and repair post and rail boundaries	4

K/600/0815	465	Construct, maintain and repair banks	4
L/600/0824	466	Construct, maintain and repair access gates	4
A/502/3215	467	Construct, maintain and repair reinforced paths	4
T/502/3214	468	Construct, maintain and repair flag paths	4
M/502/3213	469	Construct, maintain and repair boardwalks	4
K/502/3209	470	Construct, maintain and repair bark paths	4
D/502/3207	471	Construct, maintain and repair aggregate paths	4
M/600/1237	530	Prepare deer for human consumption	6
Y/600/9669	547	Plan, allocate and monitor work of a team	5

To achieve the **Level 2 Diploma in Work-based Trees and Timber (Coppicing and Greenwood Trades)**, learners must achieve **27** credits from the mandatory units, a minimum of **10** credits from optional units in group 1 and learners may achieve a minimum of **1** credit from optional units in group 2.

#### **Mandatory**

H/504/3667	418	Process coppice materials and greenwood products	4
H/504/3670	419	Sharpen and maintain edged hand tools	2
K/504/3671	429	Cut, process and extract coppice	4
L/504/3694	435	Identify tree species and their properties	5
M/504/0321	438	Fell and process trees up to 380mm	3
M/504/3641	439	Control pollution incidents	5
T/504/0319	450	Cross-cut timber using a chainsaw	1
Y/501/6353	456	Monitoring and maintaining health and safety	3

#### **Optional group 1**

D/504/3652	406	Control unwanted vegetation	3
D/504/3683	407	Use of machine powered winches in timber work	5
D/601/1651	409	Prepare and produce charcoal	3

F/504/3689	414	Prepare, drive and manoeuvre forwarder	5
H/504/3684	420	Extract wood and wood products using small motorised equipment	4
J/504/0597	424	Use a powered pole pruner	2
K/504/0320	427	Carry out maintenance of chainsaw and cutting system	2
K/504/0656	428	Remove branches and breakdown crowns using a chainsaw	2
K/504/3685	430	Choker timber for extraction	2
M/504/3669	440	Build and maintain tools and devices to process coppice and greenwood products	3
M/504/3672	441	Maintain coppice health and productivity	4
Y/504/4038	444	Safe use of a mobile elevated work platform	2
R/504/3678	445	Prepare horse for timber work	3
R/504/3647	446	Plant trees	2
R/504/3681	447	Prepare and operate hand fed machinery to process timber on site	5
R/504/3695	448	Clear sites for planting	2
R/504/3700	449	Prepare a safe working area for tree work operations	3
T/504/3656	453	Take delivery of and store plants and materials	2
T/504/3687	454	Prepare, drive and operate a skidder	5
T/504/3690	455	Operate a grapple loader	2
Y/504/3665	458	Produce wood fuel in a woodland or forest	3
Y/601/0269	462	Principles of forest and moorland fire fighting	2
D/504/3666	507	Construct a greenwood product to client specification	8
F/504/3661	511	Lay a hedge	4
F/504/3675	512	Extract timber using a horse	8
L/504/0620	525	Sever uprooted or windblown trees using a chainsaw	4

### Optional group 2

A/502/1514	401	Control pests, diseases and disorders	3
A/600/0821	403	Construct, maintain and repair stone wall boundaries	4
D/502/3966	405	Control vertebrate pests and predators by shooting	6
F/502/3216	410	Construct, maintain and repair stone pitched paths	4
H/502/3161	415	Promote responsible public use of the environment	4
H/502/3225	416	Construct, maintain and repair signs/way markers	3
H/502/3967	417	Control vertebrate pest populations using chemical means	6
J/502/1533	422	Maintaining plants outdoors	3
J/502/3217	423	Site and install site furniture and structures	2
K/502/1511	425	Identify and report the presence of pests, diseases and disorders	3
K/502/3226	426	Construct, maintain and repair simple bridges	3
L/502/3168	431	Work with and consult the local community	3
L/502/3218	432	Maintain and repair site furniture and structures	3
L/600/2699	436	Communicate with the public and others	3
M/502/3227	437	Construct, maintain and repair steps	3
M/601/1511	443	Resolve customer service problems	6
Y/502/3965	457	Control vertebrate pests and predators using traps	6
Y/600/0826	460	Construct, maintain and repair stiles	4
A/600/0818	463	Construct, maintain and repair post and wire fence boundaries	4
T/600/0817	464	Construct, maintain and repair post and rail boundaries	4
K/600/0815	465	Construct, maintain and repair banks	4
L/600/0824	466	Construct, maintain and repair access gates	4
A/502/3215	467	Construct, maintain and repair reinforced paths	4



M/502/3213	469	Construct, maintain and repair boardwalks	4
K/502/3209	470	Construct, maintain and repair bark paths	4
D/502/3207	471	Construct, maintain and repair aggregate paths	4
M/600/1237	530	Prepare deer for human consumption	6



## 2 Centre requirements

### Approval

If your Centre is approved to offer the qualification [Level 2 Diploma in Work-based Trees and Timber (0083-21, 22, 23) you can apply for the new [Level 2 Diploma in Work-based Trees and Timber (0083-71, 72, 73)] approval using the **fast track approval form**, available from the City & Guilds website.

Centres should use the fast track form if:

- there have been no changes to the way the qualifications are delivered, and
- they meet all of the approval criteria in the fast track form guidance notes.

Fast track approval is available for 12 months from the launch of the qualification. After 12 months, the Centre will have to go through the standard Qualification Approval Process. The centre is responsible for checking that fast track approval is still current at the time of application.

To offer these qualifications, new centres will need to gain both centre and qualification approval. Please refer to the *Centre Manual - Supporting Customer Excellence* for further information.

Centre staff should familiarise themselves with the structure, content and assessment requirements of the qualifications before designing a course programme.

### Resource requirements

#### Physical resources and site agreements

The equipment, systems and machinery must meet industrial standards and be capable of being used under normal working conditions.

#### Centre staffing

Staff delivering these] qualifications must be able to demonstrate that they meet the following occupational expertise requirements. They should:

- be occupationally competent or technically knowledgeable in the areas for which they are delivering training and/or have experience of providing training. This knowledge must be to the same level as the training being delivered
- have recent relevant experience in the specific area they will be assessing

- have credible experience of providing training.

Centre staff may undertake more than one role, eg tutor and assessor or internal verifier, but cannot internally verify their own assessments.

### **Assessors and internal verifiers**

The centre must provide Assessor personnel who must be occupationally competent in the industry either qualified to at least level 3 and/or have current experience of working in the industry at this level.

The centre must provide Internal Quality Assurance personnel who must be occupationally competent in the industry either qualified to at least level 3 and/or have current experience of working in the industry at this level.

Assessors/Internal Quality Assurance personnel may hold relevant qualifications such as D32/33/34 or A1/V1 or TAQA however they are not a mandatory requirement for this qualification. They should have had formal training in assessment/IQA, which may be the qualifications above, or other training that allows the assessor to demonstrate competence in the practice of assessment/IQA. This training may be carried out in-house or with an external agency.

TAQA qualifications are considered very appropriate as Continuing Professional Development (CPD) or as best practice standards for new centre staff to work towards

### **Continuing professional development (CPD)**

Centres must support their staff to ensure that they have current knowledge of the occupational area, that delivery, mentoring, training, assessment and verification is in line with best practice, and that it takes account of any national or legislative developments.

### **Candidate entry requirements**

City & Guilds does not set entry requirements for these qualifications. However, centres must ensure that candidates have the potential and opportunity to gain the qualifications successfully.

### **Age restrictions**

City & Guilds cannot accept any registrations for candidates under 16 as the qualifications are not approved for under 16s.

Candidates under 16 are not allowed to use certain machinery, for example chainsaws



### 3 Delivering the qualification

#### Initial assessment and induction

An initial assessment of each candidate should be made before the start of their programme to identify:

- if the candidate has any specific training needs,
- support and guidance they may need when working towards their qualifications.
- any units they have already completed, or credit they have accumulated which is relevant to the qualifications
- the appropriate type and level of qualification.

We recommend that centres provide an induction programme so the candidate fully understands the requirements of the qualification, their responsibilities as a candidate, and the responsibilities of the centre. This information can be recorded on a learning contract.

#### Support materials

The following resources are available for these qualifications:

Description	How to access
Candidate logbook	<a href="http://www.cityandguilds.com">www.cityandguilds.com</a>

#### Recording documents

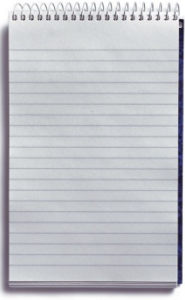
Candidates and centres may decide to use a paper-based or electronic method of recording evidence.

City & Guilds endorses several ePortfolio systems, including our own, **Learning Assistant**, an easy-to-use and secure online tool to support and evidence learners' progress towards achieving qualifications. Further details are available at: [www.cityandguilds.com/eportfolios](http://www.cityandguilds.com/eportfolios).

City & Guilds has developed a set of *Recording forms* including examples of completed forms, for new and existing centres to use as appropriate. *Recording forms* are available on the City & Guilds website.

Although new centres are expected to use these forms, centres may devise or customise alternative forms, which must be approved for use by the external verifier, before they are used by candidates and assessors at the centre. Amendable (MS Word) versions of the forms are available on the City & Guilds website.





## 4 Assessment

### **Assessment of the qualification**

Candidates must:

- have a completed portfolio of evidence for each unit

### **Recognition of prior learning (RPL)**

Recognition of prior learning means using a person's previous experience or qualifications which have already been achieved to contribute to a new qualification.

RPL is not allowed for this qualification.



## 5 Units

### Availability of units

These units are also available on The Register of Regulated Qualifications  
<http://register.ofqual.gov.uk/>

### Structure of units

These units each have the following:

- City & Guilds reference number
- unit accreditation number
- title
- level
- credit value
- unit aim
- relationship to NOS, other qualifications and frameworks
- endorsement by a sector or other appropriate body
- information on assessment
- learning outcomes which are comprised of a number of assessment criteria

<b>UAN:</b>	<b>A/502/1514</b>
<b>Level:</b>	Level 2
<b>Credit value:</b>	3
<b>GLH:</b>	23
<b>Relationship to NOS:</b>	This unit is linked to the Horticulture NOS.
<b>Endorsement by a sector or regulatory body:</b>	This unit is endorsed by Lantra, the Sector Skills Council for Land and Environment

<b>Learning outcome</b>
The learner will:
1. Be able to control pests, diseases and disorders
<b>Assessment criteria</b>
The learner can:
1.1 Confirm the control methods to be used with the appropriate person
1.2 Handle all materials carefully, safely and efficiently in accordance with instructions and organisational policy
1.3 Apply control methods in a way which minimises the risks to non-target species and the environment covering
1.4 Report any problems if they arise during pest, disease and disorder control to the appropriate person without delay
1.5 Provide clear and accurate information for recording purposes

<b>Learning outcome</b>
The learner will:
2. Be able to select, use and maintain relevant equipment
<b>Assessment criteria</b>
The learner can:
2.1 Select appropriate equipment for this area of work
2.2 Use equipment according to relevant legislation and manufacturer's instructions including Personal protective equipment
2.3 Prepare, maintain and store equipment in a safe and effective working conditions



<b>Learning outcome</b>
The learner will: 3. Be able to work safely and minimise environmental damage
<b>Assessment criteria</b>
The learner can: 3.1 Work in a way which maintains health and safety and is consistent with relevant legislation, codes of practice and any additional requirements 3.2 Carry out work in a manner which minimises environmental damage 3.3 Dispose of waste safely and correctly

<b>Learning outcome</b>
The learner will: 4. Know how to control pests, diseases and disorders
<b>Assessment criteria</b>
The learner can: 4.1 Outline the health and safety risks in controlling pests, diseases and disorders 4.2 Describe the safe handling and effective use of materials equipment and chemicals and relevant codes of practice 4.3 Describe the dangers and emergency treatments associated with the use of chemicals 4.4 Describe control methods covering all the following: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• chemical</li> <li>• biological</li> <li>• cultural</li> </ul> 4.5 Describe the types of problems which may occur and to whom they should be reported 4.6 Identify the types of records required and explain the importance of accurate record keeping

<b>Learning outcome</b>
The learner will: 5. Know relevant health and safety legislation and environmental good practice
<b>Assessment criteria</b>
The learner can: 5.1 Outline the current health and safety legislation, codes of practice and any additional requirements, including control of hazardous substances and environmental legislation

- |   |
|---|
| 5.2 Describe how environmental damage can be minimised  |
| 5.3 Describe the correct methods for disposing of waste |

<b>Learning outcome</b>
-------------------------

The learner will:
-------------------

- |  |
|--|
| 6. Know the types of equipment required and how to maintain them |
|--|

<b>Assessment criteria</b>
----------------------------

The learner can:
------------------

- |  |
|--|
| 6.1 Describe the equipment which will be required for the activity |
| 6.2 Describe the methods of maintaining the range of equipment     |

## **Unit 401            Control pests, diseases and disorders**

### Supporting information

#### **Guidance**

Simulation will not be acceptable where the unit is included in qualifications which verify competent performance. Please refer to Lantra's Assessment Strategy for further guidance.

## Unit 402

# Carry out vegetation management in proximity to above ground utilities

<b>UAN:</b>	<b>A/504/3660</b>
<b>Level:</b>	Level 2
<b>Credit value:</b>	5
<b>GLH:</b>	38
<b>Relationship to NOS:</b>	This unit is linked to the Trees and Timber NOS.
<b>Endorsement by a sector or regulatory body:</b>	This unit is endorsed by Lantra, the Sector Skills Council for Land and Environment
<b>Aim:</b>	The aim of this unit is to provide learners with the knowledge and skills to manage vegetation in proximity of above ground utilities. Utilities include electricity, railways, waterways and highways

<b>Learning outcome</b>
The learner will: 1. Be able to work safely
<b>Assessment criteria</b>
The learner can: 1.1 Identify the hazards and risks associated with the working area and the proposed work 1.2 Use appropriate tools, equipment and personal protective equipment (PPE) 1.3 Carry out work in accordance with relevant legislation, industry good practice and promotes health and safety 1.4 Carry out work to minimise environmental damage 1.5 Dispose of waste in line with legislation 1.6 Provide clear and accurate information for recording purposes

<b>Learning outcome</b>
The learner will: 2. Be able to carry out vegetation management in proximity to above ground utilities
<b>Assessment criteria</b>
The learner can: 2.1 Revalidate any pre-prepared risk assessments and work instructions 2.2 Ensure that required signage and guarding controls are in place 2.3 Operate specialist equipment in accordance with manufacturers and utility's specified parameters 2.4 Manage vegetation to ensure a reduction of its impact on utilities

<b>Learning outcome</b>
The learner will: 3. Know relevant health and safety legislation and industry good practice
<b>Assessment criteria</b>
The learner can: 3.1 Outline the current health and safety legislation, industry good practice and any additional requirements 3.2 Describe how to use and maintain tools, equipment and personal protective equipment 3.3 Describe how environmental damage can be minimised 3.4 Describe the correct methods for disposing of waste 3.5 Outline the emergency planning procedures relevant to the work area

<b>Learning outcome</b>
The learner will: 4. Know how to carry out vegetation management in proximity to above ground utilities
<b>Assessment criteria</b>
The learner can: 4.1 State the potential hazards and risks associated with working in close proximity to the utility in relation to structures, safety distances and use of equipment 4.2 State how to evaluate the tree for hazards and the implications of the hazards when identified 4.3 Outline the level of risks posed by trees and vegetation from either its bio-mechanical condition and/or proximity to the utility 4.4 State the likely impact of proposed utility work on trees and vegetation 4.5 Explain how to resolve conflicts between retaining aesthetics against the requirements of the utility owner or licence holder 4.6 Identify tree species

- |     |  |
|-----|--|
| 4.7 | Explain how species, condition of trees and the time of year can affect the work |
| 4.8 | Outline the basic principles of tree biology and how they impact on the work     |

<b>Range</b>
--------------

10 Broadleaf
--------------

4 Conifer
-----------

**Unit 402**                    **Carry out vegetation  
management in proximity to  
above ground utilities**

Supporting information

**Guidance**

Simulation will not be acceptable where the unit is included in qualifications which verify competent performance. Please refer to Lantra's Assessment Strategy for further guidance.

<b>UAN:</b>	<b>A/600/0821</b>
<b>Level:</b>	Level 2
<b>Credit value:</b>	4
<b>GLH:</b>	30
<b>Relationship to NOS:</b>	This unit is linked to the Environmental Conservation NOS.
<b>Endorsement by a sector or regulatory body:</b>	This unit is endorsed by Lantra, the Sector Skills Council for Land and Environment

<b>Learning outcome</b>
The learner will: 1. Construct, maintain and repair stone wall boundaries
<b>Assessment criteria</b>
The learner can: 1.1 Prepare the site appropriately, and in a way which minimises the effect on the surrounding environment 1.2 Identify the proposed line for the boundary from the specification and any special considerations which relate to the line including: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• health and safety</li> <li>• environmental impact</li> <li>• access</li> </ul> 1.3 Construct, maintain or repair the boundaries to specification, and finish it in a way which fits in with the surrounding environment 1.4 Take appropriate action without delay where problems occur during work including: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• accidental damage</li> <li>• difficulties in meeting the specification disturbance to wildlife or environment</li> </ul> 1.5 Handle, manoeuvre and transport materials safely 1.6 Identify and report potential improvements to the work specification 1.7 Make the site good when work is finished, and dispose of any waste or unwanted materials correctly and safely



<b>Learning outcome</b>
The learner will: 2. Be able to select, use and maintain equipment for the construction, maintenance and repair of stone wall boundaries
<b>Assessment criteria</b>
The learner can: 2.1 Select appropriate equipment and materials for this area of work 2.2 Use equipment according to instructions 2.3 Prepare, maintain and store equipment in a safe and effective working condition

<b>Learning outcome</b>
The learner will: 3. Be able to work safely and minimise environmental damage
<b>Assessment criteria</b>
The learner can: 3.1 Work in a way which maintains health and safety and is consistent with current legislation, codes of practice and any additional requirements 3.2 Carry out work in a manner which minimises environmental damage 3.3 Dispose of waste safely and correctly

<b>Learning outcome</b>
The learner will: 4. Know how to construct, maintain and repair stone wall boundaries
<b>Assessment criteria</b>
The learner can: 4.1 Describe suitable methods for preparing the site 4.2 Outline how to interpret and use relevant specifications covering: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• setting out and location</li> <li>• materials and resources</li> <li>• timing and timescales</li> <li>• working methods</li> <li>• suitability to expected use and local tradition</li> </ul> 4.3 Outline the context within which the boundary is set, and how this relates to the specification 4.4 Describe the problems which may occur during operations and how these should be dealt with covering: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• accidental damage</li> </ul>

	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• difficulties in meeting the specification disturbance to wildlife or environment</li> </ul>
4.5	Describe the environmental value of work sites, the potential effects of work on the environment and how to control these
4.6	Describe the reasons for leaving the site in the required condition on completion of operations

<b>Learning outcome</b>	
The learner will:	
5.	Know the current health and safety legislation and environmental good practice
<b>Assessment criteria</b>	
The learner can:	
5.1	Outline the current health and safety legislation, codes of practice and any additional requirements, which apply to this area of work.
5.2	Describe how environmental damage can be minimised
5.3	Describe the correct methods for disposing of waste.
5.4	Explain how to identify hazards and assess risks
5.5	Explain how to interpret risk assessments

## **Unit 403                      Construct, maintain and repair stone wall boundaries**

### **Supporting information**

#### **Guidance**

Simulation will not be acceptable where the unit is included in qualifications which verify competent performance. Please refer to Lantra's Assessment Strategy for further guidance.

<b>UAN:</b>	<b>D/502/3224</b>
<b>Level:</b>	Level 2
<b>Credit value:</b>	3
<b>GLH:</b>	23
<b>Relationship to NOS:</b>	This unit is linked to the Environmental Conservation NOS.
<b>Endorsement by a sector or regulatory body:</b>	This unit is endorsed by Lantra, the Sector Skills Council for Land and Environment

<b>Learning outcome</b>
The learner will:
1. Be able to construct, maintain and repair fords
<b>Assessment criteria</b>
The learner can:
1.1 Prepare the site appropriately, and in a way which minimises the effect on the surrounding environment to include: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• setting out and location</li> <li>• materials and resources</li> <li>• timing and timescales</li> <li>• working methods</li> <li>• suitability for expected use and local tradition</li> </ul>
1.2 Make sure that the ford is secure, and suitable for its intended use
1.3 Construct, maintain or repair the ford to specification, and finish it in a way which fits in with the surrounding environment
1.4 Take the appropriate action without delay when problems occur during your work including: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• accidental damage</li> <li>• difficulties in meeting the specification</li> <li>• disturbance to wildlife or environment</li> </ul>
1.5 Inform the appropriate person of any potential improvements to the work specification
1.6 Make the site as good as possible when work is finished.

<b>Learning outcome</b>
The learner will: 2. Be able to work safely and minimise environmental damage
<b>Assessment criteria</b>
The learner can: 2.1 Work in a way which maintains health and safety and is consistent with relevant legislation, codes of practice and any additional requirements 2.2 Carry out work in a manner which minimises environmental damage 2.3 Dispose of waste safely and correctly

<b>Learning outcome</b>
The learner will: 3. Be able to select, use and maintain relevant equipment
<b>Assessment criteria</b>
The learner can: 3.1 Select and use appropriate equipment for this area of work 3.2 Prepare, maintain and store equipment in a safe and effective working condition

<b>Learning outcome</b>
The learner will: 4. Know how to construct, maintain and repair fords
<b>Assessment criteria</b>
The learner can: 4.1 Describe how to identify hazards and assess risks 4.2 Describe how to interpret risk assessments 4.3 Describe suitable methods for preparing the site 4.4 State the purpose of the ford 4.5 Outline how to interpret and use relevant specifications covering: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• setting out and location</li> <li>• materials and resources</li> <li>• timing and timescales</li> <li>• working methods</li> <li>• suitability for expected use and local tradition</li> </ul> 4.6 Outline the context within which the ford is set, and how this relates to the specification 4.7 Describe methods for constructing, maintaining and repairing fords 4.8 Describe problems which may occur during operations and how these should be dealt with <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• accidental damage</li> </ul>

<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• difficulties in meeting the specification</li> <li>• disturbance to wildlife or environment</li> </ul> <p>4.9 Outline the required condition of the site on completion of operations</p>
---

<b>Learning outcome</b>
The learner will: 5. Distinguish between different types of access structure
<b>Assessment criteria</b>
The learner can: 5.1 Identify and describe the defining characteristics of fords compared to: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• simple bridges</li> <li>• steps</li> <li>• signs/waymarkers</li> </ul>

<b>Learning outcome</b>
The learner will: 6. Know relevant health and safety legislation and environmental good practice
<b>Assessment criteria</b>
The learner can: 6.1 Outline the current health and safety legislation, codes of practice and any additional requirements 6.2 Describe how environmental damage can be minimised 6.3 Describe the correct methods for disposing of waste

<b>Learning outcome</b>
The learner will: 7. Know the types of equipment required and how to maintain them
<b>Assessment criteria</b>
The learner can: 7.1 Describe the equipment which will be required for the activity 7.2 Describe the methods of maintaining the range of equipment

## **Unit 404                      Construct, maintain and repair fords**

### Supporting information

#### **Guidance**

Simulation will not be acceptable where the unit is included in qualifications which verify competent performance. Please refer to Lantra's Assessment Strategy for further guidance.

<b>UAN:</b>	D/502/3966
<b>Level:</b>	Level 2
<b>Credit value:</b>	6
<b>GLH:</b>	45
<b>Relationship to NOS:</b>	This unit is linked to the Environmental Conservation NOS.
<b>Endorsement by a sector or regulatory body:</b>	This unit is endorsed by Lantra, the Sector Skills Council for Land and Environment

<b>Learning outcome</b>
The learner will:
1. Be able to determine the need for vertebrate pests and predator control
<b>Assessment criteria</b>
The learner can:
1.1 Interpret signs to determine vertebrate pest and predator activity
1.2 Modify monitoring activities to take account of seasonal variations, prevailing weather conditions and habitat.

<b>Learning outcome</b>
The learner will:
2. Be able to shoot vertebrate pests and predators
<b>Assessment criteria</b>
The learner can:
2.1 Select shooting method, firearm and ammunition appropriate to the vertebrate pest and predator species and site characteristics
2.2 Use firearms according to relevant legislation and approved codes of practice
2.3 Identify and efficiently shoot target species
2.4 Minimise the disturbance caused to non-target species
2.5 Despatch wounded vertebrate pests and predators humanely.



<b>Learning outcome</b>
The learner will: 3. Be able to handle firearms and ammunition according to legal requirements
<b>Assessment criteria</b>
The learner can: 3.1 Clean, maintain and store firearms and ammunition according to legal requirements

<b>Learning outcome</b>
The learner will: 4. Be able to work safely and minimise environmental damage
<b>Assessment criteria</b>
The learner can: 4.1 Work in a way which maintains health and safety and is consistent with relevant legislation, codes of practice and any additional requirements 4.2 Carry out work in a manner which minimises environmental damage 4.3 Dispose of waste and mortalities responsibly according to legal requirements and approved codes of practice

<b>Learning outcome</b>
The learner will: 5. Be able to maintain accurate records
<b>Assessment criteria</b>
The learner can: 5.1 Maintain accurate shooting records

<b>Learning outcome</b>
The learner will: 6. Know how to determine the need for vertebrate pests and predator control
<b>Assessment criteria</b>
The learner can: 6.1 Identify common mammal and bird, pest and predator species 6.2 Describe the significance and potential effects of, vertebrate pests and predators to the site and its purpose

6.3	Describe the behavioural characteristics of vertebrate pests and predators and how these can influence the control method selected
6.4	Describe the effects of the seasons and weather conditions on monitoring activities
6.5	Describe the effects of vertebrate pests and predators on animal/plant populations
6.6	Explain how to interpret the following signs to determine pest and predator activity: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• direct sightings</li> <li>• runs</li> <li>• footprints</li> <li>• damage to habitat</li> <li>• dead animals</li> <li>• kills</li> <li>• sounds</li> <li>• smells</li> <li>• (ix) droppings</li> </ul>

<b>Learning outcome</b>	
The learner will:	
7.	Know how to shoot vertebrate pests and predators
<b>Assessment criteria</b>	
The learner can:	
7.1	Outline the codes of practice covering all aspects of vertebrate pests and predators control
7.2	Outline firearms legislation in relation to shooting vertebrate pests and predators
7.3	Explain the legal restrictions controlling the use of firearms
7.4	Explain the effective application and ranges of firearms and ammunition
7.5	Describe the habits of common vertebrate pests and predators species and how these can influence the shooting method selected
7.6	Explain how to minimise the impact of shooting on non-target species
7.7	Describe how behavioural characteristics of vertebrate pests and predators can be used to increase the effectiveness of shooting
7.8	Explain humane despatch methods
7.9	Explain how the following site characteristics can impact on shooting: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• location</li> <li>• topography</li> <li>• habitat</li> <li>• other estate activity</li> </ul>

<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• public access</li> </ul>
7.10 Explain how the selection of shooting methods takes account of:
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• pest and predator type</li> <li>• characteristics of shooting location.</li> </ul>

<b>Learning outcome</b>
The learner will:
8. Know relevant health and safety legislation and environmental good practice
<b>Assessment criteria</b>
The learner can:
8.1 Outline the current health and safety legislation, codes of practice and any additional requirements associated with controlling vertebrate pests and predators by shooting
8.2 Outline the health and safety requirements associated with the use of firearms and shooting
8.3 Outline the individual's specific responsibilities under environmental and conservation legislation in relation to monitoring and controlling pests and predators
8.4 Describe the situations when shooting can become unsafe and must be stopped
8.5 Explain how to minimise the dangers of disease or personal injury caused by handling dead animals
8.6 Describe how to safely dispose of vertebrate pests and predators according to legal requirements.

<b>Learning outcome</b>
The learner will:
9. Know how to maintain accurate records
<b>Assessment criteria</b>
The learner can:
9.1 Explain the reasons for keeping accurate, up-to-date vertebrate pest and predator records.

## **Unit 405                      Control vertebrate pests and predators by shooting**

### **Supporting information**

#### **Guidance**

Simulation will not be acceptable where the unit is included in qualifications which verify competent performance. Please refer to Lantra's Assessment Strategy for further guidance.

<b>UAN:</b>	<b>D/504/3652</b>
<b>Level:</b>	Level 2
<b>Credit value:</b>	3
<b>GLH:</b>	22
<b>Relationship to NOS:</b>	This unit is linked to Horticulture NOS.
<b>Endorsement by a sector or regulatory body:</b>	This unit is endorsed by Lantra, the Sector Skills Council for Land and Environment
<b>Aim:</b>	The aim and purpose of this unit is to provide the knowledge and skills required to control unwanted vegetation

<b>Learning outcome</b>
The learner will:
1. Be able to work safely
<b>Assessment criteria</b>
The learner can:
1.1 Identify the hazards and risks associated with the working area and the proposed work
1.2 Use appropriate tools, equipment and Personal Protective Equipment
1.3 Carry out work in accordance with relevant legislation, industry good practice and promotes health and safety
1.4 Carry out work to minimise environmental damage
1.5 Dispose of waste in line with legislation and codes of practice

<b>Learning outcome</b>
The learner will:
2. Be able to control unwanted vegetation
<b>Assessment criteria</b>
The learner can:
2.1 Identify vegetation which requires control
2.2 Control unwanted vegetation in line with work/job specification
2.3 Record clear and accurate information
2.4 Leave the site to a clean and tidy condition

<b>Learning outcome</b>
The learner will: 3. Know relevant health and safety legislation and industry good practice
<b>Assessment criteria</b>
The learner can: 3.1 Outline the current health and safety legislation, industry good practice and any additional requirements 3.2 Describe how to use and maintain tools, equipment and Personal Protective Equipment 3.3 Describe how environmental damage can be minimised 3.4 Describe the correct methods for disposing of waste

<b>Learning outcome</b>
The learner will: 4. Know how to control unwanted vegetation
<b>Assessment criteria</b>
The learner can: 4.1 Describe the best methods of control in relation to the <b>unwanted vegetation</b> 4.2 Describe how to determine the <b>control measures</b> to be implemented 4.3 State the implications of terrain, ground conditions, vegetation, season and weather in controlling unwanted vegetation 4.4 Describe the impact of using chemicals on the environment 4.5 Describe the use of mulching/mulch mats to aid the control of unwanted vegetation 4.6 Describe types of damage that would be acceptable under various circumstances

<b>Range</b>
<b>Unwanted vegetation</b> woody herbaceous grass competing hazardous notifiable climbers
<b>Control measures</b> chemical

mechanical  
manual

## Unit 406

## Control unwanted vegetation

### Supporting information

#### **Guidance**

Simulation will not be acceptable where the unit is included in qualifications which verify competent performance. Please refer to Lantra's Assessment Strategy for further guidance.



<b>UAN:</b>	<b>D/504/3683</b>
<b>Level:</b>	Level 2
<b>Credit value:</b>	5
<b>GLH:</b>	38
<b>Relationship to NOS:</b>	This unit is linked to Trees and Timber NOS.
<b>Endorsement by a sector or regulatory body:</b>	This unit is endorsed by Lantra, the Sector Skills Council for Land and Environment
<b>Aim:</b>	The aim of this unit is to provide the learner with the knowledge and skills required to prepare equipment, choker timber and operate mechanically powered line wire winches to pull trees or timber

<b>Learning outcome</b>
The learner will: 1. Be able to work safely
<b>Assessment criteria</b>
The learner can: 1.1 Identify the <b>hazards and risks</b> associated with the working area and the proposed work 1.2 Use appropriate tools, equipment and Personal Protective Equipment 1.3 Carry out work specification in accordance with relevant <b>legislation, industry good practice</b> 1.4 Carry out work to minimise environmental damage

<b>Range</b>
<p><b>Hazards and risks</b>  Carry out a site risk assessment  Identify route  Assess the Operational and environmental requirements for the site  Plan safe and efficient felling</p> <p><b>Legislation, industry good practice</b>  Store machinery, fuels and equipment securely on site</p> <p>Maintain the security of machinery and equipment on site</p> <p>Including:</p> <p>(i) check winch rope  (ii) practical checks on all operating functions prior to winching in timber covering:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• safety devices</li> <li>• winch controls</li> <li>• clutches</li> <li>• brakes</li> <li>• on winch rope and terminal components</li> <li>• ancillary equipment including hooks, shackles, sliders, pulleys, snatch blocks and chokering equipment</li> </ul> <p>Ensure the rope is of adequate capacity for the load to be applied and the distance to be pulled.</p> <p>Work safely when carrying out maintenance.</p>

<b>Learning outcome</b>
The learner will:
2. Be able to prepare for winch operation
<b>Assessment criteria</b>
The learner can:
2.1 Carry out pre-start checks to test all operating functions of the equipment

<b>Learning outcome</b>
The learner will:
3. Be able to lay out cable and choker timber
<b>Assessment criteria</b>
The learner can:
3.1 <b>Select timber</b> for extraction according to specification

3.2	<b>Choker timber</b> avoiding damage to product, instability of machine, loss of load, or damage to standing trees or the wider environment
3.3	<b>Pull out cable</b> avoiding obstacles to the winching process
3.4	Select anchor points adequate for load applied
3.5	Maintain effective <b>communication and teamwork</b> with other operators on site

<b>Range</b>
<p><b>Select timber</b> Single or multiple felled trees, poles or other timber</p> <p><b>Choker timber</b> Carry out on going visual checks Identify the timber to choker, position cable and choker as part of timber operations</p> <p><b>Pull out cable</b> Including consideration of multiplication of forces on anchor points and ensure winch operator and chokerman are safeguarded in case of anchor point failure Keep roads, tracks, waterways etc. free of debris</p> <p><b>Communication and teamwork</b> Respond to signals by hand, radio or other means to the winch operator directly or through a third party</p> <p>Maintain exclusion zones/risk zone safety distances</p>

<b>Learning outcome</b>
The learner will:
4. Be able to operate winch to pull in timber
<b>Assessment criteria</b>
The learner can:
4.1 Operate the winch in keeping with <b>site constraints</b> , in a safe and effective way
4.2 Carry out on-going visual checks
4.3 Check timber is in a safe position before releasing.

<b>Range</b>
<p><b>Site constraints</b> Site the winch in a safe and secure position for direct and offset pulling. Utilise additional safeguards and comply with safety distances when winching near roads and tracks or where others are working. Stop winching when signalled to do so or if timber or cable is pulled towards an obstacle.</p>

<b>Learning outcome</b>
The learner will: 5. Understand how to prepare for winch operation
<b>Assessment criteria</b>
The learner can: 5.1 Explain the <b>principles of powered winch operation</b> and the loads to be applied

<b>Range</b>
<b>Principles of powered winch operation</b> including the multiplication of forces when pulley (snatch) blocks are used Identify the points to inspect on the rope and terminal fixings, the range and signs of possible rope damage and the limits to rope wear and tear that are acceptable for winching timber. Describe the function of all operating controls for winch. Know the purpose of a 'certificate of conformity'

<b>Learning outcome</b>
The learner will: 6. Understand how to lay out cable and choker timber
<b>Assessment criteria</b>
The learner can: 6.1 Describe how recognise type of timber and species and select product categories to meet requirements 6.2 Explain the methods of chokering poles butt first and tip first 6.3 Describe <b>types of chokers and chokering attachments</b> to the cable 6.4 Explain the operator checks necessary when carrying out this work 6.5 State the <b>implications</b> of terrain, ground conditions, season, weather type of timber and species to laying out cable and chokering timber 6.6 Identify the <b>additional safeguards</b> required when working in offset, double rigging systems 6.7 Explain the <b>considerations</b> necessary when selecting strops and anchor points when setting pulleys used in offset pulling, double rigging

<b>Range</b>
<b>Types of chokers and chokering attachments</b> Including the optimum attachment position for the chokers on the timber

Describe the methods of attaching a cable to a vehicle when de-bogging or in self recovery

### **6.5 implications**

On the cable and its terminal, strops, pulleys, shackles, hooks, chokers etc. before and during use, including identification of the load bearing capacity of the equipment

### **6.6 additional safeguards**

Describe what to look out for when laying out the cable and chokering multiple stems

### **6.7 considerations**

With regard to safe position of chokerman when winch is operated  
Describe the signals and alternative methods of signalling to the winch operator or intermediate banksman with regard to multiplication of forces applied

## **Learning outcome**

The learner will:

7. Understand how to operate winch to pull in timber

## **Assessment criteria**

The learner can:

- 7.1 Explain the **operating techniques of using winches**
- 7.2 Summarise current health and safety legislation and industry good practice
- 7.3 Explain the importance of good communication and team work within the working environment
- 7.4 Explain the records required for management and legislative purposes

## **Range**

### **Operating techniques of using winches**

Explain the capabilities and limitations of the winch used in relation to a range of sites and timber to be extracted

that reduce damage to the ground, any remaining standing trees or the wider environment such as drains and roads to within specified limits

define the safety clearance/safety zone from the cable that should be respected prior to giving the signal to the winch operator

Explain the capabilities, limitations and methods of operating the winch on steep ground

Describe the problems to be encountered and how to avoid them where timber is likely to come up against an obstacle

Describe the advantages and disadvantages of tip first and butt first winch extraction

Describe the effect of poorly choked or awkward shaped loads on winch extraction

Explain the implications of extracting short log and whole tree extraction on winch operation

### Learning outcome

The learner will:

8. Understand relevant health and safety legislation and industry good practice

### Assessment criteria

The learner can:

8.1 Summarise current **health and safety legislation and industry good practice**

8.2 Explain the importance of good communication and team work within the working environment

8.3 Explain the **records** required for management and legislative purposes

### Range

#### Health and safety legislation and industry good practice

Outline the principles of safe manual handling techniques for tasks carried out

Describe the possible pollution & environmental damage that could occur and how to respond appropriately

Define current guidelines and safety clearances from overhead electricity conductors and what to do in the event of contact with power lines

Describe additional problems, hazards and risks posed by working on steep slopes when winching

**Records**  
and the importance of maintaining them

## **Unit 407            Use of machine powered winches in timber work**

### **Supporting information**

#### **Guidance**

Simulation will not be acceptable where the unit is included in qualifications which verify competent performance. Please refer to Lantra's Assessment Strategy for further guidance.



<b>UAN:</b>	<b>D/504/3697</b>
<b>Level:</b>	Level 2
<b>Credit value:</b>	2
<b>GLH:</b>	15
<b>Relationship to NOS:</b>	This unit is linked to Lantra
<b>Endorsement by a sector or regulatory body:</b>	This unit is endorsed by Lantra, the Sector Skills Council for Land and Environment

<b>Learning outcome</b>
The learner will: 1. Be able to work safely
<b>Assessment criteria</b>
The learner can: 1.1 Identify the hazards and risks associated with the working area and the proposed work 1.2 Use appropriate tools, equipment and Personal Protective Equipment 1.3 Carry out work in accordance with relevant legislation, industry good practice and promotes health and safety 1.4 Carry out work to minimise environmental damage 1.5 Dispose of waste in line with legislation and codes of practice

<b>Learning outcome</b>
The learner will: 2. Be able to prepare sites for planting
<b>Assessment criteria</b>
The learner can: 2.1 Select appropriate preparation methods in line with specification and the site conditions 2.2 Prepare the soil in line with the specification taking into account the weather and ground conditions 2.3 Make effective use of the available resources

<b>Learning outcome</b>
The learner will: 3. Know relevant health and safety legislation and industry good practice
<b>Assessment criteria</b>
The learner can: 3.1 Outline the current health and safety legislation, industry good practice and any additional requirements 3.2 Describe how to use and maintain tools, equipment and Personal Protective Equipment 3.3 Describe how environmental damage can be minimised 3.4 Describe the correct methods for disposing of waste

<b>Learning outcome</b>
The learner will: 4. Know how to prepare sites for planting
<b>Assessment criteria</b>
The learner can: 4.1 State how to deal with underground, ground and overhead obstructions 4.2 Describe the different <b>methods</b> for prepare sites for planting 4.3 Outline how to interpret specifications and select appropriate preparation methods 4.4 State how the site conditions affect the selection of cultivation methods

<b>Range</b>
<b>Methods</b>
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• screef</li> <li>• dollop</li> <li>• plough</li> <li>• scarify</li> <li>• rotovate</li> <li>• cultivate by hand</li> </ul>

## **Unit 408            Prepare sites for planting**

### **Supporting information**

#### **Guidance**

Simulation will not be acceptable where the unit is included in qualifications which verify competent performance. Please refer to Lantra's Assessment Strategy for further guidance.

<b>UAN:</b>	<b>D/601/1651</b>
<b>Level:</b>	Level 2
<b>Credit value:</b>	3
<b>GLH:</b>	23
<b>Relationship to NOS:</b>	This unit is linked to Lantra
<b>Endorsement by a sector or regulatory body:</b>	This unit is endorsed by Lantra, the Sector Skills Council for Land and Environment
<b>Aim:</b>	The aim of this unit is to provide the learner with the knowledge and skills required to prepare and produce charcoal. It covers identifying suitable wood species to make charcoal, locating the site for a kiln, burning and preparing the charcoal for its market.

<b>Learning outcome</b>
The learner will:
1. Be able to prepare wood for charcoal production
<b>Assessment criteria</b>
The learner can:
1.1 Identify the wood species to be burnt
1.2 Determine the amount of wood to be burnt to meet the required output level of charcoal
1.3 Check the wood is dry enough to be burnt
1.4 Identify and prepare a suitable site for the kiln and set up the kiln
1.5 Ensure the safety of the public and other workers in the vicinity of the work area
1.6 Prepare wood to an appropriate size for the type of burn in a safe and efficient manner

<b>Learning outcome</b>
The learner will: 2. Be able to produce charcoal
<b>Assessment criteria</b>
The learner can: 2.1 Wear appropriate personal protective equipment throughout process 2.2 Ensure there is an adequate supply of water in case of emergency 2.3 Monitor and control the burn taking measures to control the burn as and when necessary to ensure the quality of the charcoal produced 2.4 Assess when the kiln should be closed down and do so 2.5 Grade and bag the charcoal to ensure it is suitable for its end use 2.6 Where appropriate sift the charcoal to remove the dust or fines

<b>Learning outcome</b>
The learner will: 3. Be able to work safely and minimise environmental damage
<b>Assessment criteria</b>
The learner can: 3.1 Work in a way which maintains health and safety, and is consistent with relevant legislation, codes of practice and any other relevant requirements 3.2 Carry out work in a way which minimises environmental damage 3.3 Dispose of waste safely and correctly

<b>Learning outcome</b>
The learner will: 4. Know how to prepare cord wood and make charcoal
<b>Assessment criteria</b>
The learner can: 4.1 Explain how the way wood is stacked has an impact on efficient drying 4.2 Explain how long wood should be dried prior to burning and how this may vary from species to species 4.3 Describe the characteristics of different wood species and the effect of species on the quality of charcoal produced 4.4 Explain the changes that occur throughout the burning process 4.5 Estimate the reduction in weight and volume of cord wood burnt for charcoal 4.6 Outline the significance of the smoke colour at different stages 4.7 Describe the type of ground and general location that is best suited for sitting a kiln

- |     |   |
|-----|---|
| 4.8 | Describe two different types of charcoal kiln and the different methods of loading and lighting |
| 4.9 | Explain how the kiln should be stored during long periods of non-use                            |

<b>Learning outcome</b>
-------------------------

The learner will:
-------------------

- |  |
|--|
| 5. Know relevant health and safety legislation and environmental good practice |
|--|

<b>Assessment criteria</b>
----------------------------

The learner can:
------------------

- |     |   |
|-----|---|
| 5.1 | Outline current relevant legislation, codes of practice and any other relevant requirements |
| 5.2 | Describe how environmental damage can be minimised  |
| 5.3 | Describe the correct methods for disposing of waste   |
| 5.4 | Carry out a risk assessment   |

## **Unit 409            Prepare and produce charcoal**

### Supporting information

#### **Guidance**

Simulation will not be acceptable where the unit is included in qualifications which verify competent performance. Please refer to Lantra's Assessment Strategy for further guidance.

<b>UAN:</b>	<b>F/502/3216</b>
<b>Level:</b>	Level 2
<b>Credit value:</b>	4
<b>GLH:</b>	30
<b>Relationship to NOS:</b>	This unit is linked to the Environmental Conservation NOS.
<b>Endorsement by a sector or regulatory body:</b>	This unit is endorsed by Lantra, the Sector Skills Council for Land and Environment

<b>Learning outcome</b>
The learner will:
1. Be able to construct, maintain and repair stone pitched paths
<b>Assessment criteria</b>
The learner can:
1.1 Identify the proposed line for the stone pitched path and the special considerations
1.2 Take steps to ensure that other site users are not put at risk by work by: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• providing information (signs etc.)</li> <li>• re-routing access away from unsafe areas</li> <li>• speaking to others on site</li> </ul>
1.3 Provide drainage to specification to suit the site's needs and its expected levels of use
1.4 Construct, maintain or repair the stone pitched path to specification, and finish it in a way which fits in with the surrounding environment to include: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• setting out and location</li> <li>• materials and resources</li> <li>• timing and timescales</li> <li>• working methods</li> <li>• suitability of expected use and local tradition</li> </ul>
1.5 Use appropriate methods to reduce the impact of erosion on areas around the path
1.6 Leave the site in a suitable condition when the work is finished.
1.7 Inform the appropriate person of any potential improvements to the work specification which are identified including:



- remedying the situation
- informing others who need to act.

**Learning outcome**

The learner will:

2. Be able to work safely and minimise environmental damage

**Assessment criteria**

The learner can:

- 2.1 Work in a way which maintains health and safety and is consistent with relevant legislation, codes of practice and any additional requirements
- 2.2 Carry out work in a manner which minimises environmental damage
- 2.3 Dispose of waste safely and correctly

**Learning outcome**

The learner will:

3. Be able to select, use and maintain relevant equipment

**Assessment criteria**

The learner can:

- 3.1 Select appropriate equipment for this area of work
- 3.2 Use equipment according to relevant legislation and manufacturer's instructions
- 3.3 Prepare, maintain and store equipment in a safe and effective working condition

**Learning outcome**

The learner will:

4. Know how to construct, maintain and repair stone pitched paths

**Assessment criteria**

The learner can:

- 4.1 State how to identify hazards, assess risks and interpret risk assessments
- 4.2 State the importance of using appropriate materials to produce a path which is fit for use and fits into the surrounding environment
- 4.3 State the methods for preparing the site and how to create suitable foundations and drainage
- 4.4 Describe the purpose of the path and how this relates to the specification and operations
- 4.5 Describe how to interpret and use relevant specifications
- 4.6 Describe the methods for constructing, maintaining and repairing stone pitched paths
- 4.7 Describe the special considerations which relate to the proposed line to include:
  - health and safety

	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• environmental impact</li> <li>• access</li> <li>• site use</li> <li>• site drainage and soils</li> <li>• site topography</li> </ul>
4.8	<p>State the problems which may occur during operations and how these should be dealt with</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• accidental damage</li> <li>• difficulties in meeting the specification</li> <li>• disturbance to wildlife or environment</li> </ul>
4.9	Describe how the site should be left on completion of operations

<b>Learning outcome</b>	
The learner will:	
5.	Know the difference between stone pitched paths and other types of path
<b>Assessment criteria</b>	
The learner can:	
5.1	<p>State the defining characteristics of reinforced paths compared to the following:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• aggregate paths</li> <li>• flag paths</li> <li>• boardwalk paths</li> <li>• reinforced paths</li> <li>• bark paths</li> </ul>
5.2	Identify typical uses of a stone pitched path

<b>Learning outcome</b>	
The learner will:	
6.	Know relevant health and safety legislation and environmental good practice
<b>Assessment criteria</b>	
The learner can:	
6.1	Outline the current health and safety legislation, codes of practice and any additional requirements
6.2	Describe how environmental damage can be minimised
6.3	Describe the correct methods for disposing of waste

<b>Learning outcome</b>	
The learner will:	
7.	Know the types of equipment required and how to maintain them
<b>Assessment criteria</b>	

The learner can:

7.1 Describe the equipment which will be required for the activity

7.2 Describe the methods of maintaining the range of equipment

## **Unit 410                      Construct, maintain and repair stone pitched paths**

### **Supporting information**

#### **Guidance**

Simulation will not be acceptable where the unit is included in qualifications which verify competent performance. Please refer to Lantra's Assessment Strategy for further guidance.

## Unit 411

# Support colleagues undertaking off ground tree related operations

<b>UAN:</b>	<b>F/504/0596</b>
<b>Level:</b>	Level 2
<b>Credit value:</b>	3
<b>GLH:</b>	23
<b>Relationship to NOS:</b>	This unit is linked to the Trees and Timber NOS
<b>Endorsement by a sector or regulatory body:</b>	This unit is endorsed by Lantra, the Sector Skills Council for Land and Environment
<b>Aim:</b>	The aim and purpose of this unit is to provide the learner with the knowledge and skills to support colleagues undertaking off ground tree-related operations

<b>Learning outcome</b>
The learner will: 1. Be able to work safely
<b>Assessment criteria</b>
The learner can: 1.1 Identify the <b>hazards and risks</b> associated with the working area and the proposed work 1.2 Use appropriate tools, equipment and personal protective equipment (PPE) 1.3 Work in a way which maintains health and safety and is consistent with relevant <b>legislation and industry good practice</b> 1.4 Carry out work to minimise environmental damage 1.5 Dispose of waste in line with legislation

<b>Range</b>
<b>hazards and risks</b> 3 hazards and the associated risks with the working area. 3 hazards and the associated risks with the proposed work.
<b>legislation and industry good practice</b> INDG317; AFAG301

<b>Learning outcome</b>
The learner will: 2. Be able to support colleagues undertaking off ground tree related operations
<b>Assessment criteria</b>
The learner can: 2.1 Prepare <b>additional equipment</b> to support aerial operations 2.2 Pass and retrieve equipment to and from the aerial operator 2.3 Enter the drop zone safely and effectively 2.4 Assist with the removal of aerial tree sections 2.5 Maintain the climbing system 2.6 Clean and tidy the work area

<b>Range</b>
<b>2.1 additional equipment</b> Learner to set up appropriate pulling/lowering system Using ropes for pulling and lowering

<b>Learning outcome</b>
The learner will: 3. Know relevant health and safety legislation and industry good practice
<b>Assessment criteria</b>
The learner can: 3.1 Outline the current <b>health and safety legislation and industry good practice</b> 3.2 Describe how to <b>use and maintain tools, equipment and personal protective equipment</b> 3.3 Describe the correct methods for disposing of waste 3.4 Outline the <b>emergency planning procedures</b> relevant to the work area

<b>Range</b>
<b>health and safety legislation and industry good practice</b> 2 points Health and Safety at Work Act 1974; Provision and Use of Work Equipment Regulations 1998 (PUWER 98); 1 reason Arboriculture Forestry Advisory Group (AFAG)
<b>use and maintain tools, equipment and personal protective equipment</b> 4 requirements Lifting Operations and Lifting Equipment Regulations 1998 (LOLER)

<p>3 requirements Work at Height Regulations 2005</p> <p><b>emergency planning procedures</b> State 5 emergency procedures</p>
--

<b>Learning outcome</b>
The learner will:
4. Know how to support colleagues undertaking off ground tree related operations
<b>Assessment criteria</b>
The learner can:
4.1 Explain how to <b>monitor and control sites</b> to ensure safe working
4.2 State why <b>aerial operators require support</b>
4.3 Describe how to ensure that <b>access equipment and systems</b> are in safe working order
4.4 Describe how to safely <b>pass and retrieve equipment</b> to the climber
4.5 State <b>why it is important to remove arising from the drop zone</b> as soon as it is safe to do so
4.6 Explain <b>why it is important to inform the climber promptly and clearly of any changes</b> in the hazards and risks of the site

<b>Range</b>
<b>monitor and control sites</b> 2 examples of each
<b>aerial operators require support</b> 3 reasons
<b>access equipment and systems</b> 5 access equip Access Equipment - includes access and egress, Mobile Elevated Work Platforms (MEWPS), hanging off ropes, rope access, rope positioning, ladders, scaffolding, cranes, spikes Climber in this case means the person working off the ground which could include Mobile Elevated Work Platforms or rope and harness
<b>pass and retrieve equipment</b> 1 of each
<b>why it is important to remove arising from the drop zone</b> 3 reasons

**why it is important to inform the climber promptly and clearly of any changes**

2 reasons



**Unit 411**                    **Support colleagues undertaking  
off ground tree related  
operations**

Supporting information

**Guidance**

Simulation will not be acceptable where the unit is included in qualifications which verify competent performance. Please refer to Lantra's Assessment Strategy for further guidance.

<b>UAN:</b>	<b>F/504/3644</b>
<b>Level:</b>	Level 2
<b>Credit value:</b>	3
<b>GLH:</b>	23
<b>Relationship to NOS:</b>	This unit is linked to the Trees and Timber NOS.
<b>Endorsement by a sector or regulatory body:</b>	This unit is endorsed by Lantra, the Sector Skills Council for Land and Environment
<b>Aim:</b>	The aim of this unit is to provide the learner with the knowledge and skills required to create a drainage system

<b>Learning outcome</b>
The learner will: 1. Be able to work safely
<b>Assessment criteria</b>
The learner can: 1.1 Identify the hazards and risks associated with the working area and the proposed work 1.2 Use appropriate tools, equipment and Personal Protective Equipment 1.3 Carry out work specification in accordance with relevant legislation, industry food practice and promotes health and safety 1.4 Carry out work to minimise environmental damage 1.5 Dispose of waste in line with legislation and codes of practice

<b>Learning outcome</b>
The learner will: 2. Be able to create and open drainage system
<b>Assessment criteria</b>
The learner can: 2.1 Create a new drain using the <b>resources available</b> to meet the given specification

<b>Range</b>
<b>2.1 resources available</b>

Make effective use of available resources

**Learning outcome**

The learner will:

3. Know relevant health and safety legislation and industry good practice

**Assessment criteria**

The learner can:

- 3.1 Outline the current health and safety legislation, industry good practice and any additional requirements
- 3.2 Describe how to use and maintain tools, equipment and Personal Protective Equipment
- 3.3 Describe how environmental damage can be minimised
- 3.4 Describe the correct methods for disposing of waste.

**Learning outcome**

The learner will:

4. Know how to create open drainage systems

**Assessment criteria**

The learner can:

- 4.1 State how to interpret risk assessments
- 4.2 Describe how to **interpret plans and specification** for a new drainage system
- 4.3 Describe how to **create drains in a range of soil types and situations**
- 4.4 Explain how **environmental factors** can affect drainage systems
- 4.5 Explain how to extend an existing drainage system
- 4.6 Describe how to recognise specified aspects of the site which should be preserved.

**Range**

**interpret plans and specification**

In relation to

- route
- profile
- depth
- grade
- flow rate
- treatment of excavated material
- tolerance of specification
- legislative and organisational environmental requirements

**Create drains in a range of soil types and situations**

including organic and mineral soils in relation to

- open ground
- felled forest

- woodland sites

**Environmental factors**

- terrain
- soil texture
- soil type
- structure
- season
- weather
- flow rate of drainage system

## **Unit 412                    Create an open drainage system**

### **Supporting information**

#### **Guidance**

Simulation will not be acceptable where the unit is included in qualifications which verify competent performance. Please refer to Lantra's Assessment Strategy for further guidance.

## Unit 413

## Process arising from tree work operations

<b>UAN:</b>	<b>F/504/3658</b>
<b>Level:</b>	Level 2
<b>Credit value:</b>	1
<b>GLH:</b>	8
<b>Relationship to NOS:</b>	This unit is linked to the Trees and Timber NOS.
<b>Endorsement by a sector or regulatory body:</b>	This unit is endorsed by Lantra, the Sector Skills Council for Land and Environment

<b>Learning outcome</b>
The learner will: 1. Be able to work safely
<b>Assessment criteria</b>
The learner can: 1.1 Identify the hazards and risks associated with the working area and the proposed work 1.2 Use appropriate tools, equipment and Personal Protective Equipment 1.3 Carry out work in accordance with relevant legislation, industry good practice and promotes health and safety 1.4 Carry out work to minimise environmental damage

<b>Learning outcome</b>
The learner will: 2. Be able to process arising from tree work operations
<b>Assessment criteria</b>
The learner can: 2.1 Prepare arising in accordance with the specification, the site, relevant legislation and industry guidelines 2.2 Process arising appropriate to their condition , the specification and the site requirements 2.3 Leave the site to a clean and tidy condition

<b>Learning outcome</b>
The learner will: 3. Know relevant health and safety legislation and industry good practice
<b>Assessment criteria</b>
The learner can: 3.1 Outline the current health and safety legislation, industry good practice and any additional requirements 3.2 Describe how to use and maintain tools, equipment and Personal Protective Equipment 3.3 Describe how environmental damage can be minimised

<b>Learning outcome</b>
The learner will: 4. Know how to process arising from tree work operations
<b>Assessment criteria</b>
The learner can: 4.1 State how to secure the work site in relation to the process and public access 4.2 Describe how to select the appropriate <b>method of disposal or onward transport of arising</b> 4.3 Describe the different uses for arising

<b>Range</b>
<b>Method of disposal or onward transport of arising</b> In relation to: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• burning</li> <li>• stacking</li> <li>• spreading</li> <li>• further processing</li> <li>• re-use as another product</li> </ul>

## **Unit 413            Process arising from tree work operations**

### Supporting information

#### **Guidance**

Simulation will not be acceptable where the unit is included in qualifications which verify competent performance. Please refer to Lantra's Assessment Strategy for further guidance.



## Unit 414

## Prepare, drive and manoeuvre forwarder

<b>UAN:</b>	<b>F/504/3689</b>
<b>Level:</b>	Level 2
<b>Credit value:</b>	5
<b>GLH:</b>	38
<b>Relationship to NOS:</b>	This unit is linked to the Trees and Timber NOS
<b>Endorsement by a sector or regulatory body:</b>	This unit is endorsed by Lantra, the Sector Skills Council for Land and Environment
<b>Aim:</b>	The aim of this unit is to provide the learner with the knowledge and skills required to prepare, manoeuvre and operate a forwarder in a range of woodland and forestry situations.

<b>Learning outcome</b>
The learner will: 1. Be able to work safely
<b>Assessment criteria</b>
The learner can: 1.1 Identify the <b>hazards and risks associated</b> with the working area and the proposed work 1.2 Use appropriate tools, equipment and Personal Protective Equipment 1.3 Carry out <b>work specification</b> in accordance with relevant legislation, industry good practice and maintains health and safety 1.4 Carry out work to minimise environmental damage.

<b>Range</b>
<b>Hazards and risks associated</b> Carry out a site risk assessment Identify route Assess the Operational and environmental requirements for the site Plan safe and efficient felling

**Work specification**

Store machinery, fuels and equipment securely on site.

**Learning outcome**

The learner will:

2. Be able to prepare, drive and manoeuvre forwarder

**Assessment criteria**

The learner can:

- 2.1 Carry out **pre and post-start checks** to test all operating functions of the equipment
- 2.2 **Drive the machine on site** in a safe and effective way
- 2.3 **Manoeuvre the machine on site** in a safe and effective way.

**Range****Pre and post-start checks**

including pre start visual checks to base machine safety devices, prior to forwarding, including fire control equipment

**Drive the machine on site**

When loaded to specified capacity and in keeping with site constraints.

Create brash mats with small trees, tops etc. to reduce ground damage and aid flotation

Store machinery securely on site

**Manoeuvre the machine on site**

When loaded to specified capacity and in keeping with site constraints.

Create brash mats with small trees, tops etc. to reduce ground damage and aid flotation.

**Learning outcome**

The learner will:

3. Be able to operate grapple

**Assessment criteria**

The learner can:

- 3.1 Use machine to load/feed wood products
- 3.2 Grade products to facilitate subsequent handling, processing or uplift for onward dispatch
- 3.3 Separate products for subsequent handling, processing or uplift for onward dispatch
- 3.4 Stack produce flush to a safe and stable height and condition.

<b>Learning outcome</b>
The learner will: 4. Know how to prepare forwarder
<b>Assessment criteria</b>
The learner can: 4.1 State the <b>safety requirements, routine and functional checks</b> required for machine and operator protection.

<b>Range</b>
<b>Safety requirements, routine and functional checks</b> such as OPS, ROPS and FOPS and other safety devices the need for carrying out routine operator checks and basic maintenance  Identify the function of all operating controls for drive unit and forwarding equipment.

<b>Learning outcome</b>
The learner will: 5. Know how to drive and manoeuvre forwarder
<b>Assessment criteria</b>
The learner can: 5.1 Describe <b>safe driving techniques</b> that should be used on site 5.2 State the implications of terrain, ground conditions, season, weather and tree condition on planning access routes and driving the machine 5.3 Outline the <b>implications</b> of extracting long logs, poles or tree length timber to forwarder extraction 5.4 Discuss the capabilities and limitations of the loader when loading and unloading 5.5 Summarise safe stacking heights, stability of stacks and signing requirements 5.6 Describe how to segregate and grade produce to meet required specification.

<b>Range</b>
<b>Safe driving techniques</b>

Reduce damage to the ground, any remaining standing trees or the wider environment to within specified limits

**implications**  
Describe how to use recovery and de-bogging techniques.

<b>Learning outcome</b>
The learner will: 6. Know relevant health and safety legislation and industry good practice
<b>Assessment criteria</b>
The learner can: 6.1 Outline current <b>health and safety legislation, codes of practice and any additional requirements</b> 6.2 State why it is important to maintain good communication and team work within the working environment 6.3 Describe the types of records that may be required for management and legislative requirements

<b>Range</b>
<b>Health and safety legislation, codes of practice and any additional requirements</b>  Explain the implications of working at height in relation to routine operator checks and basic maintenance.  Explain how to plan, set up and use maintenance and fuelling areas.  Discuss current guidelines on machinery operation, risk zones and safety clearances from overhead electricity conductors and what to do in the event of contact with power lines.  And the importance of accurate record keeping PУWER LOLER

## **Unit 414            Prepare, drive and manoeuvre forwarder**

### Supporting information

#### **Guidance**

Simulation will not be acceptable where the unit is included in qualifications which verify competent performance. Please refer to Lantra's Assessment Strategy for further guidance.

<b>UAN:</b>	H/502/3161
<b>Level:</b>	Level 2
<b>Credit value:</b>	4
<b>GLH:</b>	30
<b>Relationship to NOS:</b>	This unit is linked to Lantra
<b>Endorsement by a sector or regulatory body:</b>	This unit is endorsed by Lantra, the Sector Skills Council for Land and Environment

<b>Learning outcome</b>
The learner will:
1. Be able to safeguard members of the public and others
<b>Assessment criteria</b>
The learner can:
1.1 Maintain the safety of the public and others during visits to the site
1.2 Work safely encouraging everyone throughout all activities to follow current legislation, codes of practice, organisational policies and procedures

<b>Learning outcome</b>
The learner will:
2. Be able to safeguard the environment
<b>Assessment criteria</b>
The learner can:
2.1 Provide information and advice to encourage members of the public to use the site in a way which is consistent with its purpose and condition
2.2 Identify visitors and others who may cause a threat and take the appropriate action to minimise any damage or risk, covering two of the following:
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• to the site and its contents</li> <li>• to flora and fauna</li> <li>• to own personal health and safety</li> <li>• to other people's health and safety.</li> </ul>

<b>Learning outcome</b>
The learner will: 3. Know how to safeguard members of the public and the environment
<b>Assessment criteria</b>
The learner can: 3.1 Outline organisational codes of practice and requirements about the care of visitors and other members of the public, eg supporting people in terms of their safety and welfare by providing information and advice 3.2 State the needs of the public and others, and when to influence their use of the site and offer advice or help 3.3 State why the organisation may have certain access policies or specific areas for public access 3.4 Explain the importance of balancing the needs of the site with the needs of the public and others 3.5 Describe the features of the site and the effects the public and others may have on it 3.6 Outline threats the public may pose to: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• the site and its contents</li> <li>• flora and fauna</li> <li>• own personal health and safety</li> <li>• other people's health and safety</li> </ul> 3.7 Explain how to handle people who cause a threat to sites in an effective, safe and courteous way.

<b>Learning outcome</b>
The learner will: 4. Know relevant health and safety legislation and environmental good practice
<b>Assessment criteria</b>
The learner can: 4.1 Outline the current health and safety legislation, codes of practice and any additional requirements

## **Unit 415            Promote responsible public use of the environment**

### **Supporting information**

#### **Guidance**

Simulation will not be acceptable where the unit is included in qualifications which verify competent performance. Please refer to Lantra's Assessment Strategy for further guidance.



<b>UAN:</b>	H/502/3225
<b>Level:</b>	Level 2
<b>Credit value:</b>	3
<b>GLH:</b>	23
<b>Relationship to NOS:</b>	This unit is linked to the Environmental Conservation NOS
<b>Endorsement by a sector or regulatory body:</b>	This unit is endorsed by Lantra, the Sector Skills Council for Land and Environment

<b>Learning outcome</b>
The learner will:
1. Be able to construct, maintain and repair signs/way markers
<b>Assessment criteria</b>
The learner can:
1.1 Prepare the site appropriately, and in a way which minimises the effect on the surrounding environment to include: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• setting out and location</li> <li>• materials and resources</li> <li>• timing and timescales</li> <li>• working methods</li> <li>• suitability for expected use and local tradition</li> </ul>
1.2 Make sure that the signs/way markers are secure, and suitable for its intended use
1.3 Construct, maintain or repair the signs/way markers to specification, and finish it in a way which fits in with the surrounding environment
1.4 Take the appropriate action without delay when problems occur during your work including: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• accidental damage</li> <li>• difficulties in meeting the specification</li> <li>• disturbance to wildlife or environment</li> </ul>
1.5 Inform the appropriate person of any potential improvements to the work specification
1.6 Make the site as good as possible when work is finished

<b>Learning outcome</b>
The learner will: 2. Be able to work safely and minimise environmental damage
<b>Assessment criteria</b>
The learner can: 2.1 Work in a way which maintains health and safety and is consistent with relevant legislation, codes of practice and any additional requirements 2.2 Carry out work in a manner which minimises environmental damage 2.3 Dispose of waste safely and correctly.

<b>Learning outcome</b>
The learner will: 3. Be able to select, use and maintain relevant equipment
<b>Assessment criteria</b>
The learner can: 3.1 Select and use appropriate equipment for this area of work 3.2 Prepare, maintain and store equipment in a safe and effective working condition.

<b>Learning outcome</b>
The learner will: 4. Know how to construct, maintain and repair signs/way markers
<b>Assessment criteria</b>
The learner can: 4.1 Describe how to identify hazards and assess risks 4.2 Describe how to interpret risk assessments 4.3 Describe suitable methods for preparing the site 4.4 State the purpose of the signs/way markers 4.5 Outline how to interpret and use relevant specifications covering: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• setting out and location</li> <li>• materials and resources</li> <li>• timing and timescales</li> <li>• working methods</li> <li>• suitability for expected use and local tradition</li> </ul> 4.6 Outline the context within which the signs/way markers are set, and how this relates to the specification 4.7 Describe methods for constructing, maintaining and repairing signs/way markers 4.8 Describe problems which may occur during operations and how these should be dealt with <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• accidental damage</li> </ul>

<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• difficulties in meeting the specification</li> <li>• disturbance to wildlife or environment</li> </ul> <p>4.9 Outline the required condition of the site on completion of operations.</p>
--

<b>Learning outcome</b>
The learner will: 5. Distinguish between different types of access structure
<b>Assessment criteria</b>
The learner can: 5.1 Identify and describe the defining characteristics of signs/ way markers compared to: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• simple bridges</li> <li>• fords</li> <li>• steps.</li> </ul>

<b>Learning outcome</b>
The learner will: 6. Know relevant health and safety legislation and environmental good practice
<b>Assessment criteria</b>
The learner can: 6.1 Outline the current health and safety legislation, codes of practice and any additional requirements 6.2 Describe how environmental damage can be minimised 6.3 Describe the correct methods for disposing of waste.

<b>Learning outcome</b>
The learner will: 7. Know the types of equipment required and how to maintain them
<b>Assessment criteria</b>
The learner can: 7.1 Describe the equipment which will be required for the activity 7.2 Describe the methods of maintaining the range of equipment.

## **Unit 416            Construct, maintain and repair signs/way markers**

Supporting information

### **Guidance**

Simulation will not be acceptable where the unit is included in qualifications which verify competent performance. Please refer to Lantra's Assessment Strategy for further guidance.

## Unit 417

## Control vertebrate pest populations using chemical means

<b>UAN:</b>	<b>H/502/3967</b>
<b>Level:</b>	Level 2
<b>Credit value:</b>	6
<b>GLH:</b>	45
<b>Relationship to NOS:</b>	This unit is linked to Environmental Conservation NOS
<b>Endorsement by a sector or regulatory body:</b>	This unit is endorsed by Lantra, the Sector Skills Council for Land and Environment

<b>Learning outcome</b>
The learner will: 1. Be able to determine the need for vertebrate pest control
<b>Assessment criteria</b>
The learner can: 1.1 Interpret signs to determine vertebrate pest and predator activity 1.2 Identify the presence of non- target species 1.3 Select a control method appropriate to the vertebrate pests, the characteristics of the site and its location

<b>Learning outcome</b>
The learner will: 2. Be able to control vertebrate pest populations using chemical means
<b>Assessment criteria</b>
The learner can: 2.1 Develop a regime to control the application of chemical agents 2.2 Set-up and maintain the necessary equipment to effectively control application of chemicals according to manufacturers' recommendations 2.3 Handle and use chemicals safely and efficiently according to manufacturers' recommendations 2.4 Implement controls in a manner which minimises the risk to non-target species and the environment

- |  |
|--|
| <p>2.5 Monitor the effectiveness of the control method</p> <p>2.6 Take appropriate action when problems arise during pest control activities</p> |
|--|

<b>Learning outcome</b>
-------------------------

The learner will:
-------------------

- |   |
|---|
| 3. Be able to work safely and minimise environmental damage |
|---|

<b>Assessment criteria</b>
----------------------------

The learner can:
------------------

- |  |
|--|
| 3.1 Work in a way which maintains health and safety and is consistent with relevant legislation, codes of practice and any additional requirements |
| 3.2 Carry out work in a manner which minimises environmental damage  |
| 3.3 Dispose of any corpses and spent materials according to legal requirements   |

<b>Learning outcome</b>
-------------------------

The learner will:
-------------------

- |   |
|---|
| 4. Be able to maintain accurate records |
|---|

<b>Assessment criteria</b>
----------------------------

The learner can:
------------------

- |   |
|---|
| 4.1 Maintain accurate vertebrate pest control records |
|---|

<b>Learning outcome</b>
-------------------------

The learner will:
-------------------

- |   |
|---|
| 5. Know how to determine the need for vertebrate pest control |
|---|

<b>Assessment criteria</b>
----------------------------

The learner can:
------------------

- |  |
|--|
| 5.1 Identify common pests species  |
| 5.2 Describe the behavioural characteristics of vertebrate pests and how these can influence the control method selected   |
| 5.3 Describe the effects of the seasons and weather conditions on monitoring and control activities  |
| 5.4 Describe the effects of vertebrate pests on animal/plant populations   |
| 5.5 Explain how to interpret the following signs to determine pest activity: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• direct sightings</li> <li>• runs</li> <li>• footprints</li> <li>• damage to habitat</li> </ul> |

- dead animals
- kills
- sounds
- smells
- droppings.

**Learning outcome**

The learner will:

6. Know how to control vertebrate pest populations using chemical means

**Assessment criteria**

The learner can:

- 6.1 Describe common vertebrate pest species and the significance of their presence
- 6.2 Describe the characteristics of different vertebrate pest species, and their potential effects on sites
- 6.3 Explain how to adapt pest control methods to take account of changes in the weather
- 6.4 Explain why it is important to control the application of chemicals for non-target species
- 6.5 Explain how to monitor the effectiveness of the control methods
- 6.6 Explain the actions to take when the following problems arise during vertebrate pest control:
- chemical spillage
  - malfunction of equipment
  - changes in environmental conditions.

**Learning outcome**

The learner will:

7. Know relevant health and safety legislation and environmental good practice

**Assessment criteria**

The learner can:

- 7.1 Outline the current health and safety legislation, codes of practice and any additional requirements associated with trapping activities
- 7.2 Explain how the Control of Substances Hazardous to Health Act controls the use of chemicals
- 7.3 Outline the legal restrictions on the use of chemicals including the certificates and training required before chemical can be used
- 7.4 Outline the individual's specific responsibilities under environmental and conservation legislation in relation to monitoring and controlling pests

7.5 Describe how to safely dispose of vertebrate pests and predators according to legal requirements
--

<b>Learning outcome</b>
-------------------------

The learner will:
-------------------

8. Know how to maintain accurate records
--

<b>Assessment criteria</b>
----------------------------

The learner can:
------------------

8.1 Explain the reason for keeping accurate, up-to-date vertebrate pest control records
---



**Unit 417                      Control vertebrate pest  
populations using chemical  
means**

Supporting information

**Guidance**

Simulation will not be acceptable where the unit is included in qualifications which verify competent performance. Please refer to Lantra's Assessment Strategy for further guidance.

## Unit 418

## Process coppice materials and greenwood products

<b>UAN:</b>	H/504/3667
<b>Level:</b>	Level 2
<b>Credit value:</b>	4
<b>GLH:</b>	30
<b>Relationship to NOS:</b>	This unit is linked to the Trees and Timber NOS.
<b>Endorsement by a sector or regulatory body:</b>	This unit is endorsed by Lantra, the Sector Skills Council for Land and Environment
<b>Aim:</b>	The aim of this unit is to provide the learner with the knowledge and skills required to process wood for green wood products

<b>Learning outcome</b>
The learner will: 1. Be able to work safely
<b>Assessment criteria</b>
The learner can: 1.1 Identify the <b>hazards and risks</b> associated with the working area and the proposed work 1.2 Use appropriate tools, equipment and personal protective equipment (PPE) safely 1.3 Carry out work in accordance with relevant legislation, industry good practice and maintains health and safety

<b>Range</b>
<b>Hazards and risks</b> Complete an appropriate risk assessment

<b>Learning outcome</b>
The learner will: 2. Be able to process coppice materials and green wood products
<b>Assessment criteria</b>
The learner can: 2.1 Agree specification for coppice products

2.2	Plan a <b>work schedule</b> to maximise material usage and minimise waste
2.3	Assess the quality of timber as to its suitability for the green wood product
2.4	Process <b>materials into products</b> using the appropriate method
2.5	<b>Present</b> the products to meet the specification.

<b>Range</b>
<b>Work schedule</b> With SMART Objective
<b>Materials into products</b> Prepare and process
<b>Present</b> Finish and present

<b>Learning outcome</b>
The learner will: 3. Know relevant health and safety legislation and industry good practice
<b>Assessment criteria</b>
The learner can: 3.1 Outline the current health and safety legislation, industry good practice and any additional requirements 3.2 Describe how to use and maintain tools, equipment and personal protective equipment (PPE).

<b>Learning outcome</b>
The learner will: 4. Know how to process coppice materials and green wood products
<b>Assessment criteria</b>
The learner can: 4.1 Describe how to interpret specifications to identify and cost all <b>elements</b> for a job 4.2 Describe the values of primary coppice species 4.3 Describe how to recognise appropriate <b>woods</b> and main reasons for their use 4.4 Describe how the seasonality of coppice material can affect the availability and durability of a product 4.5 Describe the methods used to prolong the workable life of seasonal coppice materials

- 4.6 Describe how to assess the quality of the coppice materials and final products
- 4.7 Describe different processing methods
- 4.8 Assess **wood condition**
- 4.9 Describe how to work different types of split wood.

## **Range**

### **Elements**

Including:

- estimate the amount of materials required,
- the rate of uptake
- avoid over-or under stocking

### **Woods**

The different properties and uses of different woodland tree species

- hazel
- oak
- ash
- willow
- sycamore
- birch
- beech
- chestnut

### **Wood condition**

- peeling
- splitting
- cleaving
- riving
- sawing
- axing, chopping
- draw knifing
- rate of growth
- grain structure and continuity
- presence of knots
- fungal attack
- insect attack
- degree of seasoning
- age
- rots, splits and shanks.

## **Unit 418                  Process coppice materials and greenwood products**

### **Supporting information**

#### **Guidance**

Simulation will not be acceptable where the unit is included in qualifications which verify competent performance. Please refer to Lantra's Assessment Strategy for further guidance.

## Unit 419

## Sharpen and maintain edged hand tools

<b>UAN:</b>	<b>H/504/3670</b>
<b>Level:</b>	Level 2
<b>Credit value:</b>	2
<b>GLH:</b>	15
<b>Relationship to NOS:</b>	This unit is linked to the Trees and Timber NOS.
<b>Endorsement by a sector or regulatory body:</b>	This unit is endorsed by Lantra, the Sector Skills Council for Land and Environment
<b>Aim:</b>	The aim and purpose of this unit is to provide the learner with the knowledge and skills to sharpen and maintain edged hand tools

<b>Learning outcome</b>
The learner will: 1. Be able to work safely
<b>Assessment criteria</b>
The learner can: 1.1 Identify the hazards and risks associated with the working area and the proposed work 1.2 Use appropriate tools, equipment and personal protective equipment (PPE) 1.3 Carry out work in accordance with relevant legislation, industry good practice and maintains health and safety

<b>Learning outcome</b>
The learner will: 2. Be able to sharpen and maintain edged hand tools
<b>Assessment criteria</b>
The learner can: 2.1 Identify <b>minor defects</b> in a hand tool handle or shaft 2.2 Maintain hand tool handle or shaft 2.3 Identify defective and 'dull' cutting edges 2.4 Identify major defects in tools

## 2.5 Repair tool to a safe working condition

### Range

#### Minor defects

Fix any minor defects

#### Repair tool

replacing the handle

regrinding the bevel

honing the cutting edge

store tools correctly to maintain condition and are safe to use

### Learning outcome

The learner will:

3. Know relevant health and safety legislation and industry good practice

### Assessment criteria

The learner can:

- 3.1 Outline the current health and safety legislation, industry good practice and any additional requirements
- 3.2 Describe how to use and maintain tools, equipment and personal protective equipment (PPE)
- 3.3 Describe the correct methods for disposing of waste
- 3.4 Identify legitimate sources and quality criteria for professional tools

### Learning outcome

The learner will:

4. Know how to sharpen and maintain edged hand tools

### Assessment criteria

The learner can:

- 4.1 Describe the different methods of fitting a new handle or shaft and the appropriate materials
- 4.2 State the different **methods and devices** for sharpening tools
- 4.3 State how to safely test the sharpness of a tool and when a tool requires sharpening
- 4.4 Compare the different **tool edge profiles** and their appropriateness for different purposes

### Range

#### Methods and devices

Appropriate use of angle grinders appropriate use of a range of sharpening stones and the difference between oil and wet stones

**Tool edge profiles**

Identify the bevel and edge characteristics of individual edge tools required to fulfil their specific function

the importance of 'temper' in an edge tool



## **Unit 419                  Sharpen and maintain edged hand tools**

### **Supporting information**

#### **Guidance**

Simulation will not be acceptable where the unit is included in qualifications which verify competent performance. Please refer to Lantra's Assessment Strategy for further guidance.

## Unit 420

## Extract wood and wood products using small motorised equipment

<b>UAN:</b>	<b>H/504/3684</b>
<b>Level:</b>	Level 2
<b>Credit value:</b>	4
<b>GLH:</b>	30
<b>Relationship to NOS:</b>	This unit is linked to the Trees and Timber NOS.
<b>Endorsement by a sector or regulatory body:</b>	This unit is endorsed by Lantra, the Sector Skills Council for Land and Environment

<b>Learning outcome</b>
The learner will: 1. Be able to work safely
<b>Assessment criteria</b>
The learner can: 1.1 Identify the hazards and risks associated with the <b>working area</b> and the proposed work 1.2 Use appropriate tools, equipment and Personal Protective Equipment 1.3 Carry out work specification in accordance with relevant legislation, industry good practice and maintains health and safety 1.4 Carry out work to minimise environmental damage

<b>Range</b>
<b>Working area</b> Prepare access and egress routes in a serviceable condition

<b>Learning outcome</b>
The learner will: 2. Be able to extract wood and wood products
<b>Assessment criteria</b>
The learner can: 2.1 Extract wood products effectively and efficiently

- |   |
|---|
| <p>2.2 Unload products in accordance with the specification</p> <p>2.3 <b>Grade products</b> in accordance with the specification</p> <p>2.4 Accumulate products in agreed area</p> |
|---|

<b>Range</b>
--------------

<b>Grade products</b>
-----------------------

separate products in accordance with the specification
--

<b>Learning outcome</b>
-------------------------

The learner will:
-------------------

- |   |
|---|
| 3. Know relevant health and safety legislation and industry good practice |
|---|

<b>Assessment criteria</b>
----------------------------

The learner can:
------------------

- |  |
|--|
| 3.1 Outline the current health and safety legislation and industry good practice |
| 3.2 Describe how environmental damage can be minimised                           |

<b>Learning outcome</b>
-------------------------

The learner will:
-------------------

- |   |
|---|
| 4. Know how to extract wood and wood products |
|---|

<b>Assessment criteria</b>
----------------------------

The learner can:
------------------

- |  |
|--|
| 4.1 Describe the need for and the benefits of <b>carrying out routine operator checks and basic maintenance</b> in line with manufacturers' recommendations          |
| 4.2 Explain the implications of terrain, ground conditions, season, weather, load and timber type/condition on <b>planning access routes and driving the machine</b> |
| 4.3 Describe the effect of unbalanced loads on extraction  |
| 4.4 Describe methods of grading, stacking and handling products  |

<b>Range</b>
--------------

<b>Carrying out routine operator checks and basic maintenance i</b>
---

Describe how to use and maintain tools, equipment and Personal Protective Equipment
---

<b>Planning access routes and driving the machine</b>
---

Explain how to select suitable extraction routes
--

State the capabilities and limitations of the machinery used including slope limitations and maximum safe working load
--

**Unit 420**                    **Extract wood and wood  
products using small motorised  
equipment**

Supporting information

**Guidance**

Simulation will not be acceptable where the unit is included in qualifications which verify competent performance. Please refer to Lantra's Assessment Strategy for further guidance.

<b>UAN:</b>	H/504/0316
<b>Level:</b>	Level 2
<b>Credit value:</b>	3
<b>GLH:</b>	22
<b>Relationship to NOS:</b>	This unit is linked to the Trees and Timber NOS
<b>Endorsement by a sector or regulatory body:</b>	This unit is endorsed by Lantra, the Sector Skills Council for Land and Environment

<b>Learning outcome</b>
The learner will:
1. Be able to work safely
<b>Assessment criteria</b>
The learner can:
1.1 Identify the <b>hazards and risks associated</b> with the working area and the proposed work
1.2 Work in a way which maintains health and safety and is consistent with relevant legislation and industry good practice
1.3 Use access and tree climbing equipment and personal protective equipment (PPE)
1.4 Carry out work to <b>minimise environmental damage</b>

<b>Range</b>
<b>Hazards and risks associated</b>
3 hazards and the associated risks with the working area
3 hazards and the associated risks with the proposed work
<b>Minimise environmental damage</b>
Check the working area for potential (negative) environmental damage
Report finding(s) as appropriate
Carry out any required control measure(s)

<b>Learning outcome</b>
The learner will: 2. Be able to access a tree using a rope and harness
<b>Assessment criteria</b>
The learner can: 2.1 Perform a <b>hazard evaluation</b> and Work at Height assessment of the tree prior to commencing the work 2.2 Inspect access equipment to ensure it is safe and fit for use under manufacturers instructions and relevant legislation 2.3 Use <b>access and positioning methods</b> appropriate to the assessed risk 2.4 Use appropriate positioning techniques within the crown 2.5 Communicate appropriately with ground staff 2.6 Descend tree in a controlled manner and remove equipment appropriately

<b>Range</b>
<b>Hazard evaluation</b> 6 hazards of the tree
<b>Access and positioning methods</b> Minimum 2 branch walks 1 branch walk to be 5m from stem Supplementary anchor point to be demonstrated on 1 branch

<b>Learning outcome</b>
The learner will: 3. Know relevant health and safety legislation and industry good practice
<b>Assessment criteria</b>
The learner can: 3.1 Outline the <b>key health and safety legislation and industry good practice</b> 3.2 Describe how to use and maintain tools, equipment and personal protective equipment 3.3 Outline the <b>emergency planning procedures</b> relevant to the work area

<b>Range</b>
<b>Key health and safety legislation and industry good practice</b> Lifting Operations and Lifting Equipment Regulations 1998 (LOLER) The Provision and Use of Work Equipment Regulations 1998 (PUWER) Work at Height Regulations 2005

Arboricultural Forestry Advisory Guides (AFAG)  
The Arboricultural Association Technical Guides

**Emergency planning procedures**

State 5 emergency procedures

**Learning outcome**

The learner will:

4. Know how to access a tree using a rope and harness

**Assessment criteria**

The learner can:

- 4.1 Describe different **methods used to safely access a tree**
- 4.2 Describe different **positioning techniques** used within crowns
- 4.3 Describe how to ensure that access equipment and systems are in safe working order
- 4.4 Outline the basic principles of tree biology and how they impact on the work
- 4.5 Explain how the species, condition of trees and time of year affect the work

**Range**

**4.1 methods used to safely access a tree**

3 methods

**4.2 positioning techniques**

Describe 2 techniques

## **Unit 421            Access a tree using a rope and                                  harness**

### **Supporting information**

#### **Guidance**

Simulation will not be acceptable where the unit is included in qualifications which verify competent performance. Please refer to Lantra's Assessment Strategy for further guidance.



<b>UAN:</b>	<i>J/502/1533</i>
<b>Level:</b>	Level 2
<b>Credit value:</b>	3
<b>GLH:</b>	23
<b>Relationship to NOS:</b>	This unit is linked to Horticulture NOS
<b>Endorsement by a sector or regulatory body:</b>	This unit is endorsed by Lantra, the Sector Skills Council for Land and Environment

<b>Learning outcome</b>
The learner will:
1. Be able to select, use tools and maintain relevant equipment
<b>Assessment criteria</b>
The learner can:
1.1 Select appropriate equipment for this area of work
1.2 Use equipment according to relevant legislation and manufacturer's instructions
1.3 Prepare, maintain and store equipment in a safe and effective working condition

<b>Learning outcome</b>
The learner will:
2. Be able to maintain the health of plants outdoors
<b>Assessment criteria</b>
The learner can:
2.1 Inspect plants as instructed
2.2 Identify all of the following threats to promote plant health:
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• pests</li> <li>• diseases</li> <li>• disorders</li> <li>• unfavourable conditions</li> <li>• competing growth</li> </ul>
2.3 Use correct and effective methods of dealing with threats to plant health
2.4 Promote and maintain health growth using all of the following methods:
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• feeding</li> <li>• watering</li> </ul>

- surface cultivation
- mulching

**Learning outcome**

The learner will:

3. Be able to work safely and minimise environmental damage

**Assessment criteria**

The learner can:

- 3.1 Work in a way which maintains health and safety, is consistent with relevant legislation, codes of practice and any additional requirements
- 3.2 Carry out work in a manner which minimises environmental damage
- 3.3 Dispose of waste safely and correctly

**Learning outcome**

The learner will:

4. Know how to maintain the health of plants outdoors

**Assessment criteria**

The learner can:

- 4.1 Describe how to check and report signs of damage or threats to health to include;
- pests
  - diseases
  - disorders
  - unfavourable conditions
  - competing growth
- 4.2 State how seasonal weather conditions affect plant growth and health
- 4.3 Describe the different methods used to promote plant health including:
- feeding
  - watering
  - surface cultivation
  - mulching
- 4.4 Describe the effects of soil conditions on plant growth
- 4.5 State why watering regimes vary for different soils and plants
- 4.6 Describe how the correct use of agrochemicals/pesticides can improve plant health
- 4.7 Describe how the incorrect use of agrochemicals / pesticides can harm plants
- 4.8 Describe the methods of dealing with threats to plant health covering; physical, cultural and irrigation.

<b>Learning outcome</b>
The learner will: 5. Know relevant health and safety and animal welfare legislation and environmental good practice
<b>Assessment criteria</b>
The learner can: 5.1 Outline the current health and safety and animal welfare legislation, codes of practice and any additional requirements 5.2 Describe how environmental damage can be minimised 5.3 Describe the correct methods for disposing of organic and inorganic waste.

## **Unit 422                    Maintaining plants outdoors**

### **Supporting information**

#### **Guidance**

Simulation will not be acceptable where the unit is included in qualifications which verify competent performance. Please refer to Lantra's Assessment Strategy for further guidance.

<b>UAN:</b>	<b>J/502/3217</b>
<b>Level:</b>	Level 2
<b>Credit value:</b>	2
<b>GLH:</b>	15
<b>Relationship to NOS:</b>	This unit is linked to the Trees and Timber NOS.
<b>Endorsement by a sector or regulatory body:</b>	This unit is endorsed by Lantra, the Sector Skills Council for Land and Environment

<b>Learning outcome</b>
The learner will:
1. Be able to site and install site furniture and structures
<b>Assessment criteria</b>
The learner can:
1.1 Select the most appropriate place to site the structure in line with job specification and site conditions
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• slope</li> <li>• drainage</li> <li>• access for work and use</li> <li>• setting out and location</li> <li>• materials and resources</li> <li>• timing and timescales</li> <li>• working methods</li> <li>• suitability of expected use and local tradition</li> </ul>
1.2 Take the appropriate action without delay when you have problems meeting specifications.
1.3 Install the structure in line with job specification either:
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• large</li> <li>• small</li> </ul>
1.4 Ensure that the structure is safe and secure before leaving the site
1.5 Inform your line manager of any potential improvements to the work specification which you identify
1.6 Leave the work area safe and tidy after work is completed

<b>Learning outcome</b>
The learner will: 2. Be able to select, use and maintain relevant equipment
<b>Assessment criteria</b>
The learner can: 2.1 Work in a way which maintains health and safety and is consistent with relevant legislation, codes of practice and any additional requirements 2.2 Carry out work in a manner which minimises environmental damage 2.3 Dispose of waste safely and correctly

<b>Learning outcome</b>
The learner will: 3. Be able to select, use and maintain relevant equipment
<b>Assessment criteria</b>
The learner can: 3.1 Select appropriate equipment for this area of work 3.2 Use equipment according to relevant legislation and manufacturer's instructions 3.3 Prepare, maintain and store equipment in a safe and effective working condition

<b>Learning outcome</b>
The learner will: 4. Understand the need to site and install site furniture and structures
<b>Assessment criteria</b>
The learner can: 4.1 Describe the factors which determine where a structure should be sited <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• slope</li> <li>• drainage</li> <li>• access for work and use</li> </ul> 4.2 Describe the purpose of the structure 4.3 Summarise how to interpret and use relevant specifications <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• setting out and location</li> <li>• materials and resources</li> <li>• timing and timescales</li> <li>• working methods</li> <li>• suitability of expected use and local tradition</li> </ul> 4.4 Outline the context within which the structure is to be set, and how this relates to the specification 4.5 Describe methods for installing both small and large structures

- |     |  |
|-----|--|
| 4.6 | Describe problems which may occur during operations and how these should be dealt with |
| 4.7 | Describe the required condition of the site on completion of operations                |

<b>Learning outcome</b>
-------------------------

The learner will:
-------------------

- |  |
|--|
| 5. Know relevant health and safety legislation and environmental good practice |
|--|

<b>Assessment criteria</b>
----------------------------

The learner can:
------------------

- |  |
|--|
| 5.1 Outline the current health and safety legislation, codes of practice and any additional requirements |
| 5.2 Describe how environmental damage can be minimised   |
| 5.3 Describe the correct methods for disposing of waste  |

<b>Learning outcome</b>
-------------------------

The learner will:
-------------------

- |  |
|--|
| 6. Know the types of equipment required and how to maintain them |
|--|

<b>Assessment criteria</b>
----------------------------

The learner can:
------------------

- |  |
|--|
| 6.1 Describe the equipment which will be required for the activity |
| 6.2 Describe the methods of maintaining the range of equipment     |

## **Unit 423            Site and install site furniture and structures**

### Supporting information

#### **Guidance**

Simulation will not be acceptable where the unit is included in qualifications which verify competent performance. Please refer to Lantra's Assessment Strategy for further guidance.



<b>UAN:</b>	<i>J/504/0597</i>
<b>Level:</b>	Level 2
<b>Credit value:</b>	2
<b>GLH:</b>	15
<b>Relationship to NOS:</b>	This unit is linked to Trees and Timber NOS.
<b>Endorsement by a sector or regulatory body:</b>	This unit is endorsed by Lantra, the Sector Skills Council for Land and Environment

<b>Learning outcome</b>
The learner will:
1. Be able to work safely
<b>Assessment criteria</b>
The learner can:
1.1 Identify the <b>hazards and risks</b> associated with the working area and the proposed work
1.2 Use appropriate tools, equipment and personal protective equipment (PPE)
1.3 Work in a way which maintains health and safety and is consistent with relevant legislation and industry good practice
1.4 Carry out work to <b>minimise environmental damage</b>
1.5 Dispose of waste safely in line with legislation.

<b>Range</b>
<b>Hazards and risks</b>
3 hazards and the associated risks with the working area. 3 hazards and the associated risks with the proposed work.
<b>Minimise environmental damage</b>
Check the working area for potential (negative) environmental damage Report finding(s) as appropriate Carry out any required control measure(s)

<b>Learning outcome</b>
The learner will: 2. Be able to use a powered pole pruner
<b>Assessment criteria</b>
The learner can: 2.1 Check all <b>safety features</b> on the powered pole pruner are present and not damaged 2.2 Maintain a powered pole pruner in accordance with <b>operator's handbook</b> using appropriate tools 2.3 Maintain cutting system in accordance with operator's handbook using appropriate tools 2.4 Reassemble the powered pole pruner and cutting system to functional/operational standard 2.5 Carry out pre-start checks and setting of the machine for use 2.6 Demonstrate safe starting of the powered pole pruner 2.7 Select <b>relevant pruning methods</b> 2.8 Reduce and remove branches using appropriate cuts 2.9 Process arising 2.10 Clean and tidy working area.

<b>Range</b>
<p><b>Safety features</b></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Spark plug</li> <li>• Air filter</li> <li>• Fuel and oil filter</li> <li>• Cooling system</li> <li>• Exhaust system</li> <li>• Clutch/drive system</li> <li>• Sprocket</li> <li>• Starter mechanism/recoil system</li> <li>• Greasing/lubrication (as appropriate)</li> </ul> <p>Include chain and guide bar Identify damaged, missing or worn components and report any defects appropriately</p> <p><b>Operator's handbook</b> INDG317; Operators handbook</p> <p><b>Relevant pruning methods</b> Appropriate to the specification, branch size and condition</p>

<b>Learning outcome</b>
The learner will: 3. Know relevant health and safety legislation and industry good practice
<b>Assessment criteria</b>
The learner can: 3.1 Outline the current <b>health and safety legislation and industry good practice</b> 3.2 Outline the emergency planning and procedures relevant to the working area 3.3 Identify appropriate <b>personal protective equipment</b> 3.4 Describe how <b>environmental damage can be minimised</b> 3.5 Describe <b>methods for disposing waste</b>

<b>Range</b>
<b>Health and safety legislation and industry good practice</b> 2 points from each: Health and Safety at Work Act 1974 Provision and Use of Work Equipment Regulations 1998 (PUWER 98). 1 reason: Arboriculture Forestry Advisory Group (AFAG) AFAG802 – paragraph 16: emergency procedures
<b>Personal protective equipment</b> CE marking referred to Including: Safety boots Gloves Head, ear and eye protection Non snag outer clothing Personal First Aid kit Harness
<b>Environmental damage can be minimised</b> 2 examples.
<b>Methods for disposing waste</b> State 3 methods.

<b>Learning outcome</b>
The learner will: 4. Know how to use a powered pole pruner
<b>Assessment criteria</b>
The learner can: 4.1 Explain why safety features are fitted to a powered pole pruner and how they function 4.2 Explain the function and maintenance requirements of individual components <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Spark plug</li> <li>• Air filter</li> <li>• Chainbrake</li> <li>• Cooling system</li> <li>• Exhaust system</li> <li>• Clutch/drive system</li> <li>• Sprocket</li> <li>• Starter mechanism/recoil system</li> <li>• Greasing/lubrication</li> <li>• Guide bar</li> <li>• Chain</li> </ul> 4.3 Describe the <b>problems</b> encountered when chain and guide bar are worn, damaged or poorly maintained 4.4 Explain how to select the correct <b>filing information</b> for chain and why this is necessary 4.5 Identify different chain types and their application 4.6 Describe how to <b>identify trees</b> to be pruned 4.7 Describe appropriate pruning methods and equipment used 4.8 Describe tension and compression in a branch 4.9 Explain ways to remove a pruner trapped in a cut 4.10 Describe methods of <b>reducing and pruning</b> heavy and long branches 4.11 State how condition of trees and time of year affect the <b>approach to pruning</b>

<b>Range</b>
<b>Problems</b> 3 chain 3 guide bar
<b>Filing information</b> 2 filing angles 2 depth gauge setting 1 cutter length
<b>Chain types and their application</b> Chisel

Semi chisel

**Identify trees**

3 ways

**Remove a pruner trapped in a cut**

2 ways

**Reducing and pruning**

2 methods

**Approach to pruning**

1 reason for condition and time of year

## **Unit 424            Use a powered pole pruner**

### Supporting information

#### **Guidance**

Simulation will not be acceptable where the unit is included in qualifications which verify competent performance. Please refer to Lantra's Assessment Strategy for further guidance.

## Unit 425

## Identify and report the presence of pests, diseases and disorders

<b>UAN:</b>	<b>K/502/1511</b>
<b>Level:</b>	Level 2
<b>Credit value:</b>	3
<b>GLH:</b>	23
<b>Relationship to NOS:</b>	This unit is linked to Horticulture NOS
<b>Endorsement by a sector or regulatory body:</b>	This unit is endorsed by Lantra, the Sector Skills Council for Land and Environment

<b>Learning outcome</b>
The learner will: 1. Identify and report the presence of pests, diseases and disorders
<b>Assessment criteria</b>
The learner can: 1.1 Monitor the crop(s) in accordance with production requirements 1.2 Correctly identify the presence of pests, diseases and disorders 1.3 Correctly identify the presence of any biological controls in use and beneficial insects 1.4 Establish the extent of the pest population, disease and any disorders 1.5 Promptly report the presence to the appropriate person

<b>Learning outcome</b>
The learner will: 2 Be able to work safely and minimise environmental damage
<b>Assessment criteria</b>
The learner can: 2.1 Work in a way which maintains health and safety and is consistent with relevant legislation, codes of practice and any additional requirements 2.2 Carry out work in a manner which minimises environmental damage

<b>Learning outcome</b>
The learner will: 3 Know how to identify and report the presence of pests, diseases and disorders
<b>Assessment criteria</b>
The learner can: 3.1 Describe reasons for monitoring the crop 3.2 Describe when to carry out crop monitoring 3.3 Describe common types of pests, diseases and disorders and the problems caused 3.4 Describe biological controls and beneficial insects that can be used 3.5 Identify to whom you should report the presence and extent of pests, diseases, disorders and biological control/beneficial insects

<b>Learning outcome</b>
The learner will: 4 Know relevant health and safety legislation and environmental good practice
<b>Assessment criteria</b>
The learner can: 4.1 Outline the current health and safety legislation, codes of practice and any additional requirements 4.2 Describe how environmental damage can be minimised 4.3 Describe the correct methods for disposing of waste. 4.4 Describe the health and safety risks in monitoring pests, diseases and disorders



**Unit 425**                    **Identify and report the presence  
of pests, diseases and disorders**

Supporting information

**Guidance**

Simulation will not be acceptable where the unit is included in qualifications which verify competent performance. Please refer to Lantra's Assessment Strategy for further guidance.

<b>UAN:</b>	<b>K/502/3226</b>
<b>Level:</b>	Level 2
<b>Credit value:</b>	3
<b>GLH:</b>	23
<b>Relationship to NOS:</b>	This unit is linked to Environmental Conservation NOS.
<b>Endorsement by a sector or regulatory body:</b>	This unit is endorsed by Lantra, the Sector Skills Council for Land and Environment

<b>Learning outcome</b>	
The learner will:	
1. Be able to construct, maintain and repair simple bridge	
<b>Assessment criteria</b>	
The learner can:	
1.1	Prepare the site appropriately, and in a way which minimises the effect on the surrounding environment to include: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• setting out and location</li> <li>• materials and resources</li> <li>• timing and timescales</li> <li>• working methods</li> <li>• suitability for expected use and local tradition</li> </ul>
1.2	Make sure that the bridge is secure, and suitable for its intended use
1.3	Construct, maintain or repair the bridge to specification, and finish it in a way which fits in with the surrounding environment
1.4	Take the appropriate action without delay when problems occur during your work including: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• accidental damage</li> <li>• difficulties in meeting the specification</li> <li>• disturbance to wildlife or environment</li> </ul>
1.5	Inform the appropriate person of any potential improvements to the work specification
1.6	Make the site as good as possible when work is finished.

<b>Learning outcome</b>
The learner will: 2 Be able to work safely and minimise environmental damage
<b>Assessment criteria</b>
The learner can: 2.1 Work in a way which maintains health and safety and is consistent with relevant legislation, codes of practice and any additional requirements 2.2 Carry out work in a manner which minimises environmental damage 2.3 Dispose of waste safely and correctly.

<b>Learning outcome</b>
The learner will: 3 Be able to select, use and maintain relevant equipment
<b>Assessment criteria</b>
The learner can: 3.1 Select and use appropriate equipment for this area of work 3.2 Prepare, maintain and store equipment in a safe and effective working condition.

<b>Learning outcome</b>
The learner will: 4 Know how to construct, maintain and repair simple bridges
<b>Assessment criteria</b>
The learner can: 4.1 Describe how to identify hazards and assess risks 4.2 Describe how to interpret risk assessments 4.3 Describe suitable methods for preparing the site 4.4 State the purpose of the bridge 4.5 Outline how to interpret and use relevant specifications covering: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• setting out and location</li> <li>• materials and resources</li> <li>• timing and timescales</li> <li>• working methods</li> <li>• suitability for expected use and local tradition</li> </ul> 4.6 Outline the context within which the structure is set, and how this relates to the specification 4.7 Describe methods for constructing, maintaining and repairing simple bridges 4.8 Describe problems which may occur during operations and how these should be dealt with

4.9	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• accidental damage</li> <li>• difficulties in meeting the specification</li> <li>• disturbance to wildlife or environment</li> </ul> <p>Outline the required condition of the site on completion of operations</p>
-----	--

<b>Learning outcome</b>	
The learner will:	
5	Distinguish between different types of access structure
<b>Assessment criteria</b>	
The learner can:	
5.1	Identify and describe the defining characteristics of simple bridges compared to: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• fords</li> <li>• steps</li> <li>• (iii) signs/way markers</li> </ul>

<b>Learning outcome</b>	
The learner will:	
6	Know relevant health and safety legislation and environmental good practice
<b>Assessment criteria</b>	
The learner can:	
6.1	Outline the current health and safety legislation, codes of practice and any additional requirements
6.2	Describe how environmental damage can be minimised
6.3	Describe the correct methods for disposing of waste

<b>Learning outcome</b>	
The learner will:	
7	Know the types of equipment required and how to maintain them
<b>Assessment criteria</b>	
The learner can:	
7.1	Describe the equipment which will be required for the activity
7.2	Describe the methods of maintaining the range of equipment



## **Unit 426            Construct, maintain and repair simple bridges**

### Supporting information

#### **Guidance**

Simulation will not be acceptable where the unit is included in qualifications which verify competent performance. Please refer to Lantra's Assessment Strategy for further guidance.

## Unit 427

# Carry out maintenance of chainsaw and cutting system

<b>UAN:</b>	<b>K/504/0320</b>
<b>Level:</b>	Level 2
<b>Credit value:</b>	2
<b>GLH:</b>	15
<b>Relationship to NOS:</b>	This unit is linked to the Trees and Timber NOS
<b>Endorsement by a sector or regulatory body:</b>	This unit is endorsed by Lantra, the Sector Skills Council for Land and Environment
<b>Aim:</b>	The aim and purpose of this unit is to provide the learner with the knowledge and skills to carry out maintenance of chainsaw and cutting system

<b>Learning outcome</b>
The learner will: 1. Be able to work safely
<b>Assessment criteria</b>
The learner can: 1.1 Identify the <b>hazards and risks associated</b> with the working area and the proposed work 1.2 Use appropriate tools, equipment and personal protective equipment (PPE) 1.3 Work in a way which maintains health and safety and is consistent with relevant legislation and industry good practice 1.4 Carry out work to <b>minimise environmental damage</b> 1.5 Dispose of waste safely in line with legislation.

<b>Range</b>
<b>Hazards and risks associated</b> 3 hazards and the associated risks with the working area. 3 hazards and the associated risks with the proposed work. INDG317; AFAG301
<b>Minimise environmental damage</b> Check the working area for potential (negative) environmental damage

Report finding(s) as appropriate  
Carry out any required control measure(s).

<b>Learning outcome</b>
The learner will: 2. Be able to carry out maintenance of chainsaw and cutting system
<b>Assessment criteria</b>
The learner can: 2.1 Check all <b>safety features on the chainsaw</b> are present and not damaged 2.2 Select appropriate maintenance tools for the power unit and cutting systems in accordance with operator's handbook 2.3 Maintain power unit in accordance with operator's handbook using appropriate tools 2.4 Maintain <b>cutting system</b> in accordance with operator's handbook using appropriate tools 2.5 Reassemble chainsaw and cutting system to functional/operational standard 2.6 Clean and tidy working area.

<b>Range</b>
<b>Safety features on the chainsaw</b> INDG317; AFAG301 <ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• Spark plug</li><li>• Air filter</li><li>• Chainbrake</li><li>• Fuel and oil filter</li><li>• Cooling system</li><li>• Exhaust system</li><li>• Clutch/drive system</li><li>• Sprocket</li><li>• Starter mechanism/recoil system</li><li>• Greasing/lubrication (as appropriate)</li></ul>
<b>Cutting system</b> Include chain and guide bar Identify damaged, missing or worn components and report any defects appropriately.

<b>Learning outcome</b>
The learner will: 3 Be able to carry out operational chainsaw checks
<b>Assessment criteria</b>



<p>The learner can:</p> <p>3.1 Carry out <b>pre-start checks</b> and setting of the machine for use</p> <p>3.2 Demonstrate safe starting of the chainsaw</p> <p>3.3 Demonstrate post operational checks.</p>
<p><b>Range</b></p>
<p><b>Pre-start checks</b></p> <p>INDG317; Operator’s handbook.</p>

<p><b>Learning outcome</b></p>
<p>The learner will:</p> <p>4 Know relevant health and safety legislation and industry good practice</p>
<p><b>Assessment criteria</b></p>
<p>The learner can:</p> <p>4.1 Outline <b>key health and safety legislation and industry good practice</b></p> <p>4.2 Outline the <b>emergency planning and procedures</b> relevant to the working area</p> <p>4.3 Describe how <b>environmental damage</b> can be caused and minimised</p> <p>4.4 Describe the correct <b>methods for disposing waste</b></p> <p>4.5 Identify appropriate <b>personal protective equipment</b>.</p>

<p><b>Range</b></p>
<p><b>Key health and safety legislation and industry good practice</b></p> <p>Health and Safety at Work Act 1974;  Provision and Use of Work Equipment Regulations 1998 (PUWER 98);  Arboriculture Forestry Advisory Group (AFAG)</p>
<p><b>Emergency planning and procedures</b></p> <p>AFAG802 – paragraph 16:  5 emergency procedures</p>
<p><b>Environmental damage</b></p> <p>1 cause; 1 prevention</p>
<p><b>Methods for disposing waste</b></p> <p>2 methods</p>
<p><b>Personal protective equipment</b></p> <p>INDG317; AFAG301  CE marking referred to.</p>

<b>Learning outcome</b>
The learner will: 5 Know how to carry out maintenance of chainsaw and cutting system
<b>Assessment criteria</b>
The learner can: 5.1 Explain the <b>function(s) of all safety features</b> 5.2 Explain the function and maintenance requirements of individual components <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• spark plug</li> <li>• air filter</li> <li>• chainbrake</li> <li>• cooling system</li> <li>• exhaust system</li> <li>• clutch/drive system</li> <li>• sprocket</li> <li>• starter mechanism/recoil system</li> <li>• greasing/lubrication</li> <li>• guide bar</li> <li>• chain</li> </ul> 5.3 Describe the <b>problems encountered</b> when chain and guidance bar are worn, damaged or poorly maintained 5.4 Explain how to select the correct <b>filing information</b> for chain and why this is necessary 5.5 Identify different <b>chain types and their application</b> 5.6 Explain <b>why it is important to maintain chainsaws</b> to manufacturer's recommendations 5.7 State <b>steps to be taken</b> when a chainsaw is not repairable, faulty or non-operational.

<b>Range</b>
<b>Function(s) of all safety features</b> INDG <sub>317</sub> ; AFAG <sub>301</sub>
<b>Problems encountered</b> 3 chain, 3 guide bar
<b>Filing information</b> 2 filing angles, 2 depth gauge settings, 1 cutter length

**Chain types and their application**

Chisel

Semi chisel

**Why it is important to maintain chainsaws**

1 reason

**Steps to be taken**

2 responses

## **Unit 427**                    **Carry out maintenance of chainsaw and cutting system**

### Supporting information

#### **Guidance**

Simulation will not be acceptable where the unit is included in qualifications which verify competent performance. Please refer to Lantra's Assessment Strategy for further guidance.

## Unit 428

## Remove branches and breakdown crowns using a chainsaw

<b>UAN:</b>	<b>K/504/0656</b>
<b>Level:</b>	Level 2
<b>Credit value:</b>	2
<b>GLH:</b>	15
<b>Relationship to NOS:</b>	This unit is linked to the Trees and Timber NOS
<b>Endorsement by a sector or regulatory body:</b>	This unit is endorsed by Lantra, the Sector Skills Council for Land and Environment
<b>Aim:</b>	The aim and purpose of this unit is to provide the learner with the knowledge and skills to use a chainsaw to remove branches from felled trees

<b>Learning outcome</b>
The learner will: 1. Be able to work safely
<b>Assessment criteria</b>
The learner can: 1.1 Identify the <b>hazards and risks</b> associated with the working area and the proposed work 1.2 Use appropriate tools, equipment and personal protective equipment (PPE) 1.3 Work in a way which maintains health and safety and is consistent with relevant <b>legislation and industry good practice</b> 1.4 Carry out work to minimise environmental damage 1.5 Dispose of waste safely in line with legislation.

<b>Range</b>
<b>Hazards and risks</b> 3 hazards and the associated risks with the working area. 1 hazard and the associated risks with the proposed work.
<b>Legislation and industry good practice</b> INDG317; AFAG301

<b>Learning outcome</b>
The learner will: 2. Be able to remove branches and breakdown crowns using a chainsaw
<b>Assessment criteria</b>
The learner can: 2.1 Carry out <b>pre-start checks</b> and setting of the machine for use 2.2 Demonstrate safe starting of the chainsaw 2.3 <b>Remove branches</b> from felled trees using a recognised method 2.4 Turn tree and remove under branches using appropriate <b>aid tools and method(s)</b> where appropriate 2.5 Clean and tidy working area

<b>Range</b>
<b>Pre-start checks</b> Chain brake test Chain oil test On/off switch Oil and fuel mix Chain creep/tension
<b>Safe starting of the chainsaw</b> NDG <sub>317</sub> ; Operator's handbook INDG <sub>317</sub> ; AFAG <sub>301</sub>
<b>Remove branches</b> Appropriate to tree branch pattern, size, form and condition and to leave stem as appropriate to specification Include tension and compression As per unit requirements
<b>Aid tools and method(s)</b> All Hand-held winches Using communication systems
<b>Clean and tidy</b> As per site specification.

<b>Learning outcome</b>
The learner will: 3. Know relevant health and safety legislation and industry good practice
<b>Assessment criteria</b>
The learner can: 3.1 Outline the <b>key health and safety legislation and industry good practice</b> 3.2 Outline the <b>emergency planning procedures</b> relevant to the working area 3.3 Describe <b>how to use and maintain</b> tools, equipment and personal protective equipment 3.4 Describe how <b>environmental damage can be minimised</b> 3.5 Describe the <b>correct methods for disposing waste</b>

<b>Range</b>
<b>Key health and safety legislation and industry good practice</b> 2 points Health and Safety at Work Act 1974; Provision and Use of Work Equipment Regulations 1998 (PUWER 98); 1 reason Arboriculture Forestry Advisory Group (AFAG)
<b>Emergency planning procedures</b> AFAG802 – paragraph 16: 5 emergency procedures
<b>How to use and maintain</b> 2 reasons
<b>Environmental damage can be minimised</b> 1 cause; 1 prevention
<b>Methods for disposing waste</b> 2 methods.

<b>Learning outcome</b>
-------------------------

The learner will:

4. Know how to remove branches and breakdown crowns using a chainsaw

**Assessment criteria**

The learner can:

- 4.1 Describe how the **method of removing branches** will vary with tree species, form and condition
- 4.2 Describe how to identify tension and compression in branches
- 4.3 Outline **the implications on choice of severing method**
- 4.4 Describe **how to deal with small diameter timber under severe tension/compression**
- 4.5 State **how and when to use winches** to assist with the snedding of trees
- 4.6 Describe process for removing branches above shoulder height
- 4.7 Explain the **advantages of leaving a clean stem** after de-branching
- 4.8 State **how and when to deal with trapped branches**
- 4.9 State **how to deal with brash and branches after snedding**

**Range**

**5.1 method of removing branches**

Methods appropriate to conifers and broadleaves

2 methods

2 differences for each

**5.3 implications on choice of severing method**

1 implications

**5.4 how to deal with small diameter timber under severe tension/compression**

1 method

**how and when to use winches**

2 how

2 when

**5.7 advantages of leaving a clean stem**

3 advantages

**5.8 how and when to deal with trapped branches**

2 how

2 when

**5.9 how to deal with brash and branches after snedding**

State 2





## **Unit 428                      Remove branches and breakdown crowns using a chainsaw**

### **Supporting information**

#### **Guidance**

Trees may be conifer or broad leaved.

Trees between 200mm and 380mm: Minimum 1, maximum 2.

All branches to be removed.

Sections of stem (length/diameter in accordance with specification):

Minimum 2, maximum 6

Guide bar as appropriate to timber diameter

Trees over 560mm: Minimum 1, maximum 2

Open spreading crowns with branches and/or stem under tension and compression

Branches/limbs removal: Minimum 20, maximum 30

Sections of stem (length/diameter in accordance with specification):

Minimum 2, maximum 6

A winch is to be used to restrain or turn a stem

Guide bar as appropriate to timber diameter

Refer to Lantra SSCs Assessment Strategy

<b>UAN:</b>	<b>K/504/3671</b>
<b>Level:</b>	Level 2
<b>Credit value:</b>	4
<b>GLH:</b>	30
<b>Relationship to NOS:</b>	This unit is linked to the Trees and Timber NOS
<b>Endorsement by a sector or regulatory body:</b>	This unit is endorsed by Lantra, the Sector Skills Council for Land and Environment
<b>Aim:</b>	The unit provides the learner with the knowledge and skills to cut, process, and extract coppice

<b>Learning outcome</b>
The learner will:
1. Be able to work safely
<b>Assessment criteria</b>
The learner can:
1.1 Identify the <b>hazards and risks associated</b> with the working area and the proposed work
1.2 Use appropriate tools, equipment and personal protective equipment (PPE) safely
1.3 Carry out work in accordance with relevant legislation, industry good practice and maintain health and safety
1.4 Carry out work to minimise environmental damage.

<b>Range</b>
<b>Hazards and risks associated</b>
Carry out a site specific risk assessment

<b>Learning outcome</b>
The learner will: 2. Be able to cut, process and extract coppice
<b>Assessment criteria</b>
The learner can: 2.1 Produce a <b>work schedule</b> 2.2 Identify the species, mix, estimated age of coppice, and volume of coupe 2.3 Cut coppice stool using current good practice and to promote healthy re-growth 2.4 Process the coppice material minimising wastage 2.5 Manage standard trees 2.6 Sort/grade and bundle cut coppice for a variety of uses 2.7 Extract cut coppice using methods appropriate to the site and dimensions of material 2.8 <b>Restock the understory</b> using different methods to maintain coppice at appropriate density.

<b>Range</b>
<b>Work schedule</b> With SMART objective(s) <b>Restock the understory</b> Layering Natural regeneration

<b>Learning outcome</b>
The learner will: 3. Know relevant health and safety legislation and industry good practice
<b>Assessment criteria</b>
The learner can: 3.1 Outline the current health and safety legislation, industry good practice and any additional requirements 3.2 Describe how to use and maintain tools, equipment and personal protective equipment (PPE) 3.3 Describe how environmental damage can be minimized.

<b>Learning outcome</b>
The learner will: 4. Know how to cut, process and extract coppice
<b>Assessment criteria</b>
The learner can: 4.1 Identify <b>commonly coppiced species</b> , in summer and winter 4.2 Explain the <b>reasons for coppicing</b> 4.3 Describe <b>good practice</b> with regard to coppicing a stool 4.4 Describe how to protect stools from damage by browsing animals 4.5 Describe <b>methods of re-stocking</b> and importance of density 4.6 Describe different <b>methods of extraction</b> and their suitability to different applications 4.7 Outline habitats directives governing woodland operations 4.8 Describe the management of standard trees.

<b>Range</b>
<b>Commonly coppiced species</b> 5 species Factors that affect coppice regeneration
<b>Reasons for coppicing</b> Positive benefits of coppicing for biodiversity
<b>Good practice</b> maximise the use of cut coppice and give useable products
<b>Methods of re-stocking</b> Three methods
<b>Methods of extraction</b> Three methods



## **Unit 429**                    **Cut, process and extract coppice** Supporting information

### **Guidance**

Simulation will not be acceptable where the unit is included in qualifications which verify competent performance. Please refer to Lantra's Assessment Strategy for further guidance.

<b>UAN:</b>	<b>K/504/3685</b>
<b>Level:</b>	Level 2
<b>Credit value:</b>	2
<b>GLH:</b>	15
<b>Relationship to NOS:</b>	This unit is linked to the Trees and Timber NOS
<b>Endorsement by a sector or regulatory body:</b>	This unit is endorsed by Lantra, the Sector Skills Council for Land and Environment
<b>Aim:</b>	The aim of this unit is to provide the learner with the knowledge and skills required to choker timber to a cable crane system and communicate with the winch operator

<b>Learning outcome</b>
The learner will:
1. Be able to work safely
<b>Assessment criteria</b>
The learner can:
1.1 Identify the <b>hazards and risks</b> associated with the working area and the proposed work
1.2 Use appropriate tools, equipment and Personal Protective Equipment
1.3 Carry out work in accordance with <b>relevant legislation, industry good practice and maintains health and safety</b>
1.4 Carry out work to minimise environmental damage

<b>Range</b>
<b>Hazards and risks</b>
Carry out a site risk assessment
Identify route
Assess the Operational and environmental requirements for the site
Plan safe and efficient felling
<b>Relevant legislation, industry good practice and maintains health and safety</b>
Store machinery, fuels and equipment securely on site.



<b>Learning outcome</b>
The learner will: 2. Be able to prepare to choker timber
<b>Assessment criteria</b>
The learner can: 2.1 Agree the <b>signalling system with the winch operator</b> 2.2 Ensure the chokers are of adequate capacity and length for the timber to be choked.

<b>Range</b>
<b>Signalling system with the winch operator</b> To include operational and environmental requirements for the site. Safe and efficient working Identifying exclusion zones/risks and safety distances

<b>Learning outcome</b>
The learner will: 3. Be able to choker timber to cable
<b>Assessment criteria</b>
The learner can: 3.1 Carry out <b>on-going visual checks</b> on winch cable and terminal components and ancillary equipment 3.2 Identify the timber to choker, position cable and choker as part <b>timber operations</b> 3.3 Select <b>anchor points</b> adequate for off-set winching 3.4 Select and choker timber for extraction 3.5 Use the agreed signaling.

<b>Range</b>
<b>On-going visual checks</b> Including hooks, shackles, sliders, pulleys, snatch blocks and chokering equipment
<b>Timber operations</b> To cover 3 of the following: clear felling, thinning, wind blown clearance
<b>Anchor points</b> For double rigging or offset (diverted) pulling systems, ensure chokerperson is safeguarded in case of anchor point failure

<p><b>Timber for extraction</b></p> <p>Choker timber to avoid:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• damage to product,</li> <li>• instability of winching system,</li> <li>• loss of load,</li> <li>• damage to standing trees</li> <li>• wider environmental damage, including roads and tracks</li> </ul> <p>Avoid operating in the bight of any ropes or cables Un-choker if the load gets stuck.</p>
--

<p><b>Learning outcome</b></p> <p>The learner will:</p> <p>4. Know how to choker timber to cable</p>
<p><b>Assessment criteria</b></p> <p>The learner can:</p> <p>4.1 Describe how to recognise type of timber and species and select product categories to meet specification</p> <p>4.2 Describe the <b>methods of chokering poles</b> butt first and tip first</p> <p>4.3 Describe types of chokers and chokering attachments</p> <p>4.4 Describe <b>potential problems</b> that can occur during the operation how to deal with these</p> <p>4.5 Explain the methods and importance of the operator carrying out routine checks and maintaining equipment for use</p> <p>4.6 Explain how to choker stacks of produce.</p>

<p><b>Range</b></p> <p><b>Methods of chokering poles</b> Including the optimum attachment position for the chokers on the timber</p> <p><b>Potential problems</b> Obstacles that may be encountered when the winch is operated. Effect of poorly chokered or awkward shaped loads on winch extraction. Outline the additional points to consider when laying out the cable and chokering multiple stems.</p>
--

<p><b>Learning outcome</b></p> <p>The learner will:</p> <p>5. Know relevant health and safety legislation and industry good practice</p>
--

### Assessment criteria

The learner can:

- 5.1 Outline the current **health and safety legislation and industry good practice**
- 5.2 Describe the importance of **good teamwork and communication** within the working environment
- 5.3 Explain the **records** required for management and legislative purposes.

### Range

#### **Health and safety legislation and industry good practice**

Outline the principles of safe manual handling techniques for tasks carried out

Outline the hazards and risks posed by working on steep slopes when laying out cable and chokering timber

Describe the possible pollution and environmental damage that could occur and how to respond appropriately

#### **Good teamwork and communication**

Describe the signals and alternative methods of signalling used including use of radios

#### **Records**

The importance of maintaining them.

## Unit 430            Choker timber for extraction

### Supporting information

#### **Guidance**

Simulation will not be acceptable where the unit is included in qualifications which verify competent performance. Please refer to Lantra's Assessment Strategy for further guidance.

<b>UAN:</b>	<b>L/502/3168</b>
<b>Level:</b>	Level 2
<b>Credit value:</b>	3
<b>GLH:</b>	23
<b>Relationship to NOS:</b>	This unit is linked to the Environmental Conservation NOS.
<b>Endorsement by a sector or regulatory body:</b>	This unit is endorsed by Lantra, the Sector Skills Council for Land and Environment

<b>Learning outcome</b>
The learner will: 1. Work with and consult the local community
<b>Assessment criteria</b>
The learner can: 1.1 Identify opportunities for formal and informal consultation and co-operation with the local community, seeking specialist advice where appropriate 1.2 Establish and maintain contacts with relevant individuals and organised groups within the local community 1.3 Engage with individuals and groups within the local community to develop understanding and awareness as part of consultation 1.4 Use appropriate communication methods to seek the opinions of individuals and groups within the local community.

<b>Learning outcome</b>
The learner will: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>2 Understand the importance of working with and consulting the local community</li> </ul>
<b>Assessment criteria</b>
The learner can: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1.5 Describe the types of opportunities available for co-operation and consultation with the local community</li> <li>1.6 Describe the ways in which contact with the local community can be established</li> <li>1.7 Describe the reasons for and importance of consultation with the local community in gathering feedback</li> <li>1.8 Describe the likely impact of the organisation's work on the local community</li> <li>1.9 Outline why it is important that those you are consulting with understand the issues which they are being consulted on</li> <li>1.10 Describe the methods of gauging community opinion and the importance of providing feedback.</li> </ul>

## **Unit 431            Work with and consult the local community**

### **Supporting information**

#### **Guidance**

Simulation will not be acceptable where this unit is included in qualifications which verify competent performance. Please refer to Lantra's Assessment Strategy for further guidance.

<b>UAN:</b>	<b>L/502/3218</b>
<b>Level:</b>	Level 2
<b>Credit value:</b>	3
<b>GLH:</b>	23
<b>Relationship to NOS:</b>	This unit is linked to Trees and Timber NOS
<b>Endorsement by a sector or regulatory body:</b>	This unit is endorsed by Lantra, the Sector Skills Council for Land and Environment.

<b>Learning outcome</b>
The learner will:
1. Maintain and repair site furniture and structures
<b>Assessment criteria</b>
The learner can:
1.1 Prepare the site appropriately, and in a way which minimises the effect on the surrounding environment
1.2 Maintain or repair the structure to specification, and finish it in a way which fits in with the surrounding environment including
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• materials and resources</li> <li>• timing and timescales</li> <li>• working methods</li> <li>• suitability of expected use and local tradition</li> </ul>
1.3 Inform the appropriate person of any potential improvements to the work specification
1.4 Leave the site in a suitable condition when work is finished.

<b>Learning outcome</b>
The learner will:
2. Be able to work safely and minimise environmental damage
<b>Assessment criteria</b>
The learner can:
2.1 Work in a way which maintains health and safety and is consistent with relevant legislation, codes of practice and any additional requirements



2.2	Carry out work in a manner which minimises environmental damage
2.3	Dispose of waste safely and correctly.

<b>Learning outcome</b>
The learner will:
3. Be able to select, use and maintain relevant equipment
<b>Assessment criteria</b>
The learner can:
3.1 Select appropriate equipment for this area of work
3.2 Use equipment according to relevant legislation and manufacturer's instructions
3.3 Prepare, maintain and store equipment in a safe and effective working condition.

<b>Learning outcome</b>
The learner will:
4. Know how to maintain and/or repair site furniture and structures
<b>Assessment criteria</b>
The learner can:
4.1 State how to recognise the environmental value of sites
4.2 Suitable methods for preparing the site
4.3 Describe the purpose and context of the structure and how this relates to the specification and operations
4.4 Describe the methods for maintaining and repairing structures
4.5 State how to interpret and use relevant specifications
4.6 Describe the problems which may occur during operations and how these should be dealt with
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• accidental damage</li> <li>• difficulties in meeting the specification</li> <li>• disturbance to wildlife or environment</li> </ul>
4.7 State the importance of leaving the site in a suitable condition on completion of operations.

<b>Learning outcome</b>
The learner will:
5. Know relevant health and safety legislation and environmental good practice
<b>Assessment criteria</b>
The learner can:
5.1 Outline the current health and safety legislation, codes of practice and any additional requirements

- |  |
|--|
| 5.2 Describe how environmental damage can be minimised   |
| 5.3 Describe the correct methods for disposing of waste. |

<b>Learning outcome</b>
-------------------------

The learner will:
-------------------

- |  |
|--|
| 6. Know the types of equipment required and how to maintain them |
|--|

<b>Assessment criteria</b>
----------------------------

The learner can:
------------------

- |  |
|--|
| 6.1 Describe the equipment which will be required for the activity |
| 6.2 Describe the methods of maintaining the range of equipment.    |

## **Unit 432                      Maintain and repair site furniture and structures**

### **Supporting information**

#### **Guidance**

Simulation will not be acceptable where the unit is included in qualifications which verify competent performance. Please refer to Lantra's Assessment Strategy for further guidance.

## Unit 433

# Carry out vegetation management in proximity of underground utilities

<b>UAN:</b>	<b>L/504/3677</b>
<b>Level:</b>	Level 2
<b>Credit value:</b>	5
<b>GLH:</b>	38
<b>Relationship to NOS:</b>	This unit is linked to Trees and Timber NOS
<b>Endorsement by a sector or regulatory body:</b>	This unit is endorsed by Lantra, the Sector Skills Council for Land and Environment
<b>Aim:</b>	The aim and purpose of this unit is to provide the learner with the knowledge and skills to carry out vegetation management in proximity to underground utilities. Utilities include electricity, railways, waterways and highways.

<b>Learning outcome</b>
The learner will: 1. Be able to work safely
<b>Assessment criteria</b>
The learner can: 1.1 Identify the hazards and risks associated with the working area and the proposed work 1.2 Use appropriate tools, equipment and personal protective equipment (PPE) 1.3 Carry out work in accordance with <b>relevant legislation, industry good practice and promotes health and safety</b> 1.4 Carry out work to minimise environmental damage 1.5 Dispose of waste in line with legislation.

<b>Range</b>
<b>Relevant legislation, industry good practice and promotes health and safety</b> <ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• ensure that required signage and controls are in place</li><li>• ensure any procedures for lone working are in place</li></ul>

- clearly identify where specialised workers engaged by the utility must be used.

#### **Learning outcome**

The learner will:

2. Be able to carry out vegetation management

#### **Assessment criteria**

The learner can:

- 2.1 Operate specialist equipment in accordance with manufacturers and utility's specified parameters
- 2.2 Prune roots to reduce their impact on utilities in accordance with specifications
- 2.3 Reinstall tranches in accordance with specifications
- 2.4 Maintain records to meet utility and legislative requirements.

#### **Learning outcome**

The learner will:

3. Know relevant health and safety legislation and industry good practice

#### **Assessment criteria**

The learner can:

- 3.1 Outline the current health and safety legislation and industry good practice
- 3.2 Describe how to use and maintain tools, equipment and personal protective equipment
- 3.3 Describe how environmental damage can be minimised
- 3.4 Describe the correct methods for disposing of waste
- 3.5 Outline the emergency planning procedures relevant to the work area.

#### **Learning outcome**

The learner will:

4. Know how to carry out vegetation management

#### **Assessment criteria**

The learner can:

- 4.1 State the potential hazards and risks associated with working in close proximity to the utility in relation to structures, safety distances and use of equipment
- 4.2 Explain how species, condition of tree, their proximity to the utility and the time of year can affect the work

- 4.3 Describe the use of safety equipment specific to the utility in question and tools for operation
- 4.4 Outline the basic principles of tree biology and the implications of root reduction to different tree species
- 4.5 State the importance of maximum root retention and careful back filling.

**Unit 433**                    **Carry out vegetation  
management in proximity of  
underground utilities**

Supporting information

**Guidance**

Simulation will not be acceptable where the unit is included in qualifications which verify competent performance. Please refer to Lantra's Assessment Strategy for further guidance.

<b>UAN:</b>	L/504/3680
<b>Level:</b>	Level 2
<b>Credit value:</b>	5
<b>GLH:</b>	38
<b>Relationship to NOS:</b>	This unit is linked to Trees and Timber NOS
<b>Endorsement by a sector or regulatory body:</b>	This unit is endorsed by Lantra, the Sector Skills Council for Land and Environment
<b>Aim:</b>	The aim of this unit is to provide the learner with the knowledge and skills required to prepare, manoeuvre and operate a machine to process trees in a range of woodland and forestry situations.

<b>Learning outcome</b>
The learner will: 1. Be able to work safely
<b>Assessment criteria</b>
The learner can: 1.1 Identify the <b>hazards and risks</b> associated with the working area and the proposed work 1.2 Use appropriate tools, equipment and Personal Protective Equipment 1.3 Carry out work specification in accordance with relevant legislation, industry good practice and maintain health and safety 1.4 Carry out work to <b>minimise environmental damage</b> .

<b>Range</b>
<b>Hazards and risks</b> Carry out a site risk assessment Identify route Assess the Operational and environmental requirements for the site
<b>Minimise environmental damage</b> Store machinery, fuels and equipment securely on site.



<b>Learning outcome</b>
The learner will: 2. Be able to select and prepare machinery
<b>Assessment criteria</b>
The learner can: 2.1 Carry out <b>pre and post-start checks</b> to test all operating functions of the equipment.

<b>Range</b>
<b>Pre and post-start checks</b> including pre start visual checks to base machine safety devices, prior to harvesting timber, including fire control equipment

<b>Learning outcome</b>
The learner will: 3. Be able to drive and manoeuvre machinery
<b>Assessment criteria</b>
The learner can: 3.1 Drive the machine on site and in a safe and effective way 3.2 Manoeuvre the machine on site and in a safe and effective way 3.3 <b>Maintain brash.</b>

<b>Range</b>
<b>Maintain brash</b> With small trees, tops etc. to reduce ground damage and aid flotation Create brash for bailing

<b>Learning outcome</b>
The learner will: 4. Be able to process felled trees
<b>Assessment criteria</b>
The learner can: 4.1 <b>Process the felled trees</b> in accordance with the job specification 4.2 <b>Segregate logs</b> to enable ease of extraction

4.3 Use machinery in accordance with **relevant legislation and manufacturer's instructions**

**Range**

**Process the felled trees**

Position machine correctly, safely and effectively

Ensure that any damage to the remaining standing trees or to the environment is minimal and within specified limits

De-limb trees according to specification

Crosscut trees according to specification

Deal with shattered butts, double, multiple, rotten/dead and misshapen stems as required

Ensuring that any brash is placed clear of timber

**Segregate logs**

Stack logs to enable ease of extraction

Maintain machinery in accordance with relevant legislation and manufacturer's instructions

**Relevant legislation and manufacturer's instructions**

Store machinery securely on site.

**Learning outcome**

The learner will:

5. Know how to prepare machinery

**Assessment criteria**

The learner can:

- 5.1 State the **safety requirements, routine and functional checks** required for machine and operator protection
- 5.2 Describe **safe driving techniques** that should be used on site
- 5.3 Explain the implications of terrain, ground conditions, season, weather and tree condition on planning access routes and driving the machine.

**Range**

**Safety requirements, routine and functional checks**

<p>Such as OPS, ROPS and FOPS and other safety devices</p> <p>The need for carrying out routine operator checks and basic maintenance</p> <p>Identify the function of all operating controls for drive unit and processing equipment</p> <p>Planning and setting up re-fuelling areas</p> <p><b>Safe driving techniques</b></p> <p>Reduce damage to the ground, any remaining standing trees or the wider environment to within specified limits.</p>
---

<b>Learning outcome</b>
The learner will:
6. Know how to process trees
<b>Assessment criteria</b>
The learner can:
6.1 Describe how to select size and species to meet the job specification
6.2 Describe how to <b>process trees</b>
6.3 Describe how to <b>measure log length</b> to ensure it meets specification.

<b>Range</b>
<b>Process trees</b>
The capabilities and limitations of the machine in relation to processing
Implication of processing double, shattered, diseased, rotten, dead or other malformed trees
How to decide which trees should be prepared or processed manually
How to de-limb deformed trees
Deal with trees with oversized/inaccessible butts
<b>Measure log length</b>
Procedure for setting log length, tolerances and minimum top diameters as appropriate to machine
Regular checks on specification of processed timber during operation and recognise malfunctions.

<b>Learning outcome</b>
-------------------------

<p>The learner will:</p> <p>7. Know relevant health and safety legislation and industry good practice</p>
<p><b>Assessment criteria</b></p>
<p>The learner can:</p> <p>7.1 Outline current <b>health and safety legislation, codes of practice and any additional requirements</b></p> <p>7.2 Explain why it is important to maintain good communication and <b>team work within the working environment</b></p> <p>7.3 Describe the types of records that may be required for management and <b>legislative requirements</b>.</p>

<p><b>Range</b></p>
<p><b>Health and safety legislation, codes of practice and any additional requirements</b></p> <p>How environmental damage can be minimised</p> <p>Discuss current guidelines on machinery operation, risk zones and safety clearances from overhead electricity conductors and what to do in the event of contact with power lines</p> <p>Discuss driving techniques that reduce damage to the environment</p> <p>Explain how to prepare for crossing water courses and the use of ramps</p> <p>Describe the implications of working at height in relation to operator checks and maintenance</p> <p>Describe causes of, and how to prevent potential pollution and environmental damage when preparing and using loader - fed processor</p> <p>Describe how to minimise any pollution incident including the pollution control equipment that should be available on site and to whom any incidents should be reported</p>
<p><b>Team work within the working environment</b></p> <p>Chainsaw operators</p> <p>Hauliers</p> <p>Colleagues</p>
<p><b>Legislative requirements</b></p> <p>LOLER</p> <p>PUWER and the importance of accurate record keeping.</p>

## **Unit 434            Prepare and operate machinery to process trees**

### **Supporting information**

#### **Guidance**

Simulation will not be acceptable where the unit is included in qualifications which verify competent performance. Please refer to Lantra's Assessment Strategy for further guidance.

<b>UAN:</b>	L/504/3694
<b>Level:</b>	Level 2
<b>Credit value:</b>	5
<b>GLH:</b>	38
<b>Relationship to NOS:</b>	This unit is linked to Trees and Timber NOS
<b>Endorsement by a sector or regulatory body:</b>	This unit is endorsed by Lantra, the Sector Skills Council for Land and Environment.
<b>Aim:</b>	The aim of this unit is to provide the learner with the knowledge and skills to identify trees species. It also covers the identification of plants that are associated with trees.

<b>Learning outcome</b>
The learner will:
1. Be able to identify tree species and their properties
<b>Assessment criteria</b>
The learner can:
1.1 Identify <b>tree species</b> that are grown in the UK in all seasons
1.2 Identify <b>tree genera</b> from samples
1.3 Identify <b>plant species</b> associated with growing trees.

<b>Range</b>
<b>Tree species</b>
Identify common trees grown in Great Britain
How many should be identified: 30 species
Botanical names and common names – 20 broadleaf, 10 conifer
Use sources of information to identify species
<b>Tree genera</b>
Identify different tree genera from samples
Use tree characteristics to aid identification in relation to
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Leaves – size and shape</li> <li>• Buds</li> <li>• Bark and stems</li> <li>• Growth habit</li> </ul>

- Flowers,
- Seeds and fruit

**Plant species**

10 plant species.

**Learning outcome**

The learner will:

2. Understand the principals of tree identification

**Assessment criteria**

The learner can:

- 2.1 Describe the principles of **botanical classification and nomenclature**
- 2.2 State how plant characteristics can aid identification
- 2.3 Describe the different stages in plant and tree life cycles.

**Range**

**Botanical classification and nomenclature**

- Leaves – size and shape
- Buds
- Bark and stems
- Growth habit
- Flowers,
- Seeds and fruit
- Age classes.

**Learning outcome**

The learner will:

3. Understand the planting of trees

**Assessment criteria**

The learner can:

- 3.1 Describe the preferred growing conditions of different tree species
- 3.2 State the landscape use of different **tree species**.

**Range**

**Tree species**

10 species.

**Learning outcome**

The learner will:

4. Understand the attributes of trees

**Assessment criteria**

The learner can:

- 4.1 State the timber use of different tree species
- 4.2 State the effects of the properties of different woods on treework and site selection.



## **Unit 435            Identify tree species and their properties**

### Supporting information

#### **Guidance**

Simulation will not be acceptable where the unit is included in qualifications which verify competent performance. Please refer to Lantra's Assessment Strategy for further guidance.

<b>UAN:</b>	<b>L/600/2699</b>
<b>Level:</b>	Level 2
<b>Credit value:</b>	3
<b>GLH:</b>	23
<b>Relationship to NOS:</b>	This unit is linked to Environmental Conservation NOS
<b>Endorsement by a sector or regulatory body:</b>	This unit is endorsed by Lantra, the Sector Skills Council for Land and Environment

<b>Learning outcome</b>
The learner will:
1. Be able to communicate with the public and others
<b>Assessment criteria</b>
The learner can:
1.1 Communicate with members of the public and others effectively and in a way which promotes the organisation
1.2 Communicate information which is suitable to the needs of members of the public and others
1.3 Respond to requests for information clearly and accurately and refer queries appropriately
1.4 Encourage members of the public and others to ask questions or seek explanation
1.5 Suggest suitable sources of information to members of the public and others
1.6 Communicate appropriate health and safety information.

<b>Learning outcome</b>
The learner will:
2. Be able to work safely and minimise environmental damage
<b>Assessment criteria</b>
The learner can:
2.1 Work in a way which maintains health and safety and is consistent with current legislation, codes of practice and any additional requirements.

<b>Learning outcome</b>
The learner will: 3. Know how to communicate with the public and others
<b>Assessment criteria</b>
The learner can: 3.1 Explain why effective methods of communication are needed 3.2 Describe how to encourage queries and comments from members of the public and others 3.3 List different sources of information suitable for members of the public and others- internal and external 3.4 State the correct procedures for handling and communicating confidential information.

<b>Learning outcome</b>
The learner will: 4. Know the current health and safety legislation and environmental good practice
<b>Assessment criteria</b>
The learner can: 4.1 Outline the current health and safety legislation, codes of practice and any additional requirements, which apply to this area of work.

<b>Learning outcome</b>
The learner will: 5. Understand the values of the organisation
<b>Assessment criteria</b>
The learner can: 5.1 Identify the values of the organisation eg policies and practices for customer care, promotion of environmental good practice or equality of opportunity.

## **Unit 436                      Communicate with the public and others**

### Supporting information

#### **Guidance**

Simulation will not be acceptable where the unit is included in qualifications which verify competent performance. Please refer to Lantra's Assessment Strategy for further guidance.

<b>UAN:</b>	<b>M/502/3227</b>
<b>Level:</b>	Level 2
<b>Credit value:</b>	3
<b>GLH:</b>	23
<b>Relationship to NOS:</b>	This unit is linked to Environmental Conservation NOS.
<b>Endorsement by a sector or regulatory body:</b>	This unit is endorsed by Lantra, the Sector Skills Council for Land and Environment.

<b>Learning outcome</b>
The learner will:
1. Be able to construct, maintain and repair steps
<b>Assessment criteria</b>
The learner can:
1.1 Prepare the site appropriately, and in a way which minimises the effect on the surrounding environment to include: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• setting out and location</li> <li>• materials and resources</li> <li>• timing and timescales</li> <li>• working methods</li> <li>• suitability for expected use and local tradition</li> </ul>
1.2 Make sure that the steps are secure, and suitable for its intended use
1.3 Construct, maintain or repair the steps to specification, and finish it in a way which fits in with the surrounding environment
1.4 Take the appropriate action without delay when problems occur during your work including: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• accidental damage</li> <li>• difficulties in meeting the specification</li> <li>• disturbance to wildlife or environment</li> </ul>
1.5 Inform the appropriate person of any potential improvements to the work specification
1.6 Make the site as good as possible when work is finished.

<b>Learning outcome</b>
The learner will: 2. Be able to work safely and minimise environmental damage
<b>Assessment criteria</b>
The learner can: 2.1 Work in a way which maintains health and safety and is consistent with relevant legislation, codes of practice and any additional requirements 2.2 Carry out work in a manner which minimises environmental damage 2.3 Dispose of waste safely and correctly.

<b>Learning outcome</b>
The learner will: 3. Be able to select, use and maintain relevant equipment
<b>Assessment criteria</b>
The learner can: 3.1 Select and use appropriate equipment for this area of work 3.2 Prepare, maintain and store equipment in a safe and effective working condition.

<b>Learning outcome</b>
The learner will: 4. Know how to construct, maintain and repair steps
<b>Assessment criteria</b>
The learner can: 4.1 Describe how to identify hazards and assess risks 4.2 Describe how to interpret risk assessments 4.3 Describe suitable methods for preparing the site 4.4 State the purpose of the steps 4.5 Outline how to interpret and use relevant specifications covering: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• setting out and location</li> <li>• materials and resources</li> <li>• timing and timescales</li> <li>• working methods</li> <li>• suitability for expected use and local tradition</li> </ul> 4.6 Outline the context within which the steps are set, and how this relates to the specification 4.7 Describe methods for constructing, maintaining and repairing steps 4.8 Describe problems which may occur during operations and how these should be dealt with <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• accidental damage</li> <li>• difficulties in meeting the specification</li> </ul>

<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• disturbance to wildlife or environment</li> </ul> <p>4.9 Outline the required condition of the site on completion of operations.</p>
---

<b>Learning outcome</b>
The learner will: 5. Distinguish between different types of access structure
<b>Assessment criteria</b>
The learner can: 5.1 Identify and describe the defining characteristics of steps compared to: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• simple bridges</li> <li>• fords</li> <li>• signs/way markers.</li> </ul>

<b>Learning outcome</b>
The learner will: 6. Know relevant health and safety legislation and environmental good practice
<b>Assessment criteria</b>
The learner can: 6.1 Outline the current health and safety legislation, codes of practice and any additional requirements 6.2 Describe how environmental damage can be minimised 6.3 Describe the correct methods for disposing of waste.

<b>Learning outcome</b>
The learner will: 7. Know the types of equipment required and how to maintain them
<b>Assessment criteria</b>
The learner can: 7.1 Describe the equipment which will be required for the activity 7.2 Describe the methods of maintaining the range of equipment.





## **Unit 437                      Construct, maintain and repair steps**

### **Supporting information**

#### **Guidance**

Simulation will not be acceptable where the unit is included in qualifications which verify competent performance. Please refer to Lantra's Assessment Strategy for further guidance.

## Unit 438

## Fell and process trees up to 380mm

<b>UAN:</b>	<b>M/504/0321</b>
<b>Level:</b>	Level 2
<b>Credit value:</b>	3
<b>GLH:</b>	23
<b>Relationship to NOS:</b>	This unit is linked to Trees and Timber NOS
<b>Endorsement by a sector or regulatory body:</b>	This unit is endorsed by Lantra, the Sector Skills Council for Land and Environment.
<b>Aim:</b>	The aim and purpose of this unit is to provide the learner with the knowledge and skills to fell and process trees up to 380mm (15") using a chainsaw

<b>Learning outcome</b>
The learner will: 1. Be able to work safely
<b>Assessment criteria</b>
The learner can: 1.1 Identify the <b>hazards and risks</b> associated with the working area and the proposed work 1.2 Use appropriate <b>tools, equipment and personal protective equipment (PPE)</b> 1.3 Work in a way which maintains health and safety and is consistent with relevant legislation and industry good practice 1.4 Carry out work to <b>minimise environmental damage</b> 1.5 Dispose of waste safely in line with legislation.

<b>Range</b>
<b>Hazards and risks</b> 2 hazards and the associated risks with the working area. 3 hazards and the associated risks with the proposed work.
<b>Tools, equipment and personal protective equipment (PPE)</b> INDG <sub>317</sub> ; AFAG <sub>301</sub>

**Minimise environmental damage**

Check the working area for potential (negative) environmental damage

Report finding(s) as appropriate

Carry out any required control measure(s).

**Learning outcome**

The learner will:

2. Be able to fell and process trees up to 380mm

**Assessment criteria**

The learner can:

- 2.1 Prepare site and establish escape route(s) as appropriate
- 2.2 **Prepare trees** appropriately to the tree condition and the specification for the site
- 2.3 Carry out **pre-start checks** and setting of the chainsaw
- 2.4 Demonstrate safe starting of the chainsaw
- 2.5 **Fell trees** using recognised felling methods and felling aids
- 2.6 **Remove branches** from felled trees using a recognised method
- 2.7 **Turn tree and remove under branches** using appropriate aid tools and method(s) where appropriate
- 2.8 Select take down method which is relevant to the hung up tree size, form and condition
- 2.9 Take down a hung up tree using hand tools
- 2.10 Cross-cut timber to length in accordance with the specification
- 2.11 **Stack produce for subsequent operations** using appropriate aids and tools
- 2.12 Check timber is in an appropriate and safe position
- 2.13 Clean and tidy working area.

**Range****Prepare trees**

Brushing to be demonstrated or simulated

**Pre-start checks**

INDG317; Operators handbook

**Fell trees**

AFAG302

**Remove branches**

AFAG303

**Turn tree and remove under branches**

AFAG303

**Stack produce for subsequent operations**

Stacking must be tidy.

AFAG304.

INDG145.

Manual Handling Operations Regulations 1992.

**Learning outcome**

The learner will:

3. Know relevant health and safety legislation and industry good practice

**Assessment criteria**

The learner can:

- 3.1 Outline the **key health and safety legislation and industry good practice**
- 3.2 Outline the **emergency planning procedures** relevant to the work area
- 3.3 Describe how to use and maintain tools, equipment and personal protective equipment
- 3.4 Describe how **environmental damage** can be caused and minimised
- 3.5 Describe the correct methods for disposing of waste
- 3.6 Describe the **legal and environmental factors** for felling trees.

**Range****Key health and safety legislation and industry good practice**

Health and Safety at Work Act 1974;

Provision and Use of Work Equipment Regulations 1998 (PUWER 98);

Arboriculture Forestry Advisory Group (AFAG)

**Emergency planning procedures**

AFAG802 – paragraph 16:

5 emergency procedures

**Environmental damage**

1 cause; 1 prevention

**Methods for disposing of waste**

2 methods

**Legal and environmental factors**

2 legal factors  
2 environmental factors

### Learning outcome

The learner will:

4. Know how to fell and process trees up to 380mm

### Assessment criteria

The learner can:

- 4.1 Describe how to **identify which trees need to be felled**
- 4.2 Describe alternative felling techniques for trees up to 200mm for:
- Upright trees
  - Backward leaning trees
  - Trees heavily leaning/weighted in the intended felling direction
- 4.3 Describe felling techniques for felling trees over 200mm for:
- Upright trees
  - Backward leaning trees
  - Trees heavily leaning/weighted in the intended felling direction
- 4.4 Describe how to recognise **signs of disease and decay** in trees and modify felling methods accordingly
- 4.5 Explain the **advantages** of setting up or using a natural felling bench, brash mat or similar support prior to felling
- 4.6 Explain **how and when to use additional equipment**, to assist with the felling of trees
- 4.7 State how to recognise when a tree is difficult to fell
- 4.8 Describe the **additional safeguards** to implement when felling:
- In proximity to paths
  - Roads or areas with public access
  - Underground/above ground wayleaves.

### Range

#### identify which trees need to be felled

2 examples

#### Signs of disease and decay

1 recognise

1 modify

#### Advantages

2 advantages

**How and when to use additional equipment**

1 how

1 when

**Additional safeguards**

1 safeguard for each

**Learning outcome**

The learner will:

5. Know how to remove branches from felled trees using a chainsaw

**Assessment criteria**

The learner can:

5.1 Describe how the method of removing branches will vary with **tree species**

5.2 Describe how to identify tension and compression in branches

5.3 State the **risks to consider when removing branches**

5.4 State how and when to use equipment to assist with the snedding/ de-limbing of trees

5.5 Describe a technique for removing branches above shoulder height

5.6 Explain the **advantages of leaving a clean stem** after snedding/ de-limbing

5.7 State **how to deal with arisings** after snedding/ de-limbing,

**Range****Tree species**

1 Broadleaved

1 Conifer

**Risks to consider when removing branches**

4 risks

**Advantages of leaving a clean stem**

3 advantages

**How to deal with arisings**

2 ways

**Learning outcome**

The learner will: 6. Know how to take down hung up trees
<b>Assessment criteria</b>
The learner can: 6.1 Describe <b>take down methods</b> for a range of tree sizes 6.2 Describe <b>take down methods for trees using winches</b> and other manual and mechanical means 6.3 Identify where the danger areas are in relation to the trees being taken down 6.4 State <b>incorrect techniques for dealing with hung up trees</b> 6.5 Describe the appropriate actions to take if a tree cannot be taken down.

<b>Range</b>
<b>Take down methods</b> 2 methods
<b>Take down methods for trees using winches</b> 1 method for each
<b>incorrect techniques for dealing with hung up trees</b> AFAG302 State 5 techniques.

## Unit 438      Fell and process trees up to 380mm

### Supporting information

#### Guidance

Trees may be conifer or broad leaved.

Size: between 200mm (8") and 380mm (15")

Maximum recommended guide bar length 15"

Learner must prove operator competence using appropriate felling methods for two of the following tree types

- Upright - Minimum 1, maximum 2
- Forward leaning - Minimum 1, maximum 2
- Backward leaning - Minimum 1, maximum 2
- heavily leaning/weighted in the intended felling direction - minimum 1, maximum 2

All felled trees must have all branches removed flushed with the stem. All felled trees must be cross-cut and stacked tidily-1 hung up tree must be taken down using hand tools.

Refer to Lantra SSCs assessment strategy for further details.



<b>UAN:</b>	<b>M/504/3641</b>
<b>Level:</b>	Level 2
<b>Credit value:</b>	5
<b>GLH:</b>	38
<b>Relationship to NOS:</b>	This unit is linked to Trees and Timber NOS
<b>Endorsement by a sector or regulatory body:</b>	This unit is endorsed by Lantra, the Sector Skills Council for Land and Environment
<b>Aim:</b>	The aim of this unit is to provide the learner with the knowledge and skills required to control pollution incidents and land based industries.

<b>Learning outcome</b>
The learner will:
1. Be able to work safely
<b>Assessment criteria</b>
The learner can:
1.1 Identify the hazards and risks associated with the working area and the proposed work
1.2 Use appropriate tools, equipment and Personal Protective Equipment
1.3 Carry out work specification in accordance with relevant legislation, industry good practice and promotes health and safety
1.4 Carry out work to minimise environmental damage
1.5 Dispose of waste in line with legislation and codes of practice
1.6 Record clear and accurate information

<b>Learning outcome</b>
The learner will:
2. Be able to control pollution incidents
<b>Assessment criteria</b>
The learner can:
2.1 Identify the nature, extent and potential impact of the <b>pollution incident</b>
2.2 <b>Treat the pollution</b> incident following agreed pollution control procedures

<b>Range</b>
<p><b>Pollution incident</b>  Incidents involving the following types of pollutant:  oils and fuels  chemicals  silt</p> <p><b>Treat the pollution</b>  Use either of the following control measures:  constructing barrier ditches  constructing barrier booms  Note any changes to the scale or nature of the incident and report these changes to the designated person.</p>

<b>Learning outcome</b>
<p>The learner will:</p> <p>3. Know relevant health and safety legislation and industry good practice</p>
<b>Assessment criteria</b>
<p>The learner can:</p> <p>3.1 Outline the current health and safety legislation, industry good practice and any additional requirements</p> <p>3.2 Describe how to use and maintain tools, equipment and Personal Protective Equipment</p> <p>3.3 Describe how environmental damage can be minimised</p> <p>3.4 Describe the correct methods for disposing of waste</p> <p>3.5 Outline the emergency planning procedures relevant to the work area</p>

<b>Learning outcome</b>
<p>The learner will:</p> <p>4. Know how to control pollution incidents</p>
<b>Assessment criteria</b>
<p>The learner can:</p> <p>4.1 Explain the chain of command and roles of personnel in a pollution incident</p> <p>4.2 Describe pollution control measures for oils, fuels, chemicals and silt</p> <p>4.3 Describe how high pressure, low water volume sprays are used in controlling pollution incidents and pollutants</p> <p>4.4 Explain the impact of fuels, oils, chemicals and silt as pollutants</p>

- 4.5 Describe the implications of terrain, ground conditions, vegetation type, season and weather
- 4.6 Describe the use of absorbent materials to control surface borne pollutants
- 4.7 Outline the possible penalties for different pollution incidents

## **Unit 439                    Control pollution incidents**

### **Supporting information**

#### **Guidance**

Simulation will not be acceptable where the unit is included in qualifications which verify competent performance. Please refer to Lantra's Assessment Strategy for further guidance.

## Unit 440

## Build and maintain tools and devices to process coppice and greenwood products

<b>UAN:</b>	<b>M/504/3669</b>
<b>Level:</b>	Level 2
<b>Credit value:</b>	3
<b>GLH:</b>	23
<b>Relationship to NOS:</b>	This unit is linked to Trees and Timber NOS
<b>Endorsement by a sector or regulatory body:</b>	This unit is endorsed by Lantra, the Sector Skills Council for Land and Environment
<b>Aim:</b>	The aim and purpose of this unit is to provide the learner with the knowledge and skills to build and maintain tools and devices used to process coppice and greenwood products

<b>Learning outcome</b>
The learner will: 1. Be able to work safely
<b>Assessment criteria</b>
The learner can: 1.1 Identify the <b>hazards and risks</b> associated with the working area and the proposed work 1.2 Use appropriate tools, equipment and personal protective equipment safely 1.3 Carry out work in accordance with relevant legislation, industry good practice and maintains health and safety

<b>Range</b>
<b>Hazards and risks</b> Complete an appropriate risk assessment

<b>Learning outcome</b>
The learner will: 2. Be able to build and maintain tools and devices to process coppice and greenwood products
<b>Assessment criteria</b>
The learner can: 2.1 Develop a clear and accurate specification to build tools or devices 2.2 Source suitable materials to create the required components for tools or devices 2.3 <b>Prepare</b> the required components for tools or devices 2.4 Assemble tools or devices 2.5 Ensure <b>tools or devices are safe</b> and fit for purpose 2.6 Maintain tools and devices in safe and effective working condition.

<b>Range</b>
<b>Prepare</b> Adjust tools or device as necessary
<b>Tools or devices are safe</b> Identify any faults or improvements that can be made to the tools and devices and make right.

<b>Learning outcome</b>
The learner will: 3. Know relevant health and safety legislation and industry good practice
<b>Assessment criteria</b>
The learner can: 3.1 Outline the current health and safety legislation, industry good practice and any additional requirements 3.2 Describe how to use and maintain tools, equipment and personal protective equipment (PPE).

<b>Learning outcome</b>
The learner will: 4. Know how to build and maintain tools and devices to process coppice and greenwood products
<b>Assessment criteria</b>
The learner can: 4.1 Describe suitable materials and their assembly 4.2 Explain the function of each part of a tool or device

- 4.3 Evaluate different sources of information to obtain clear and comprehensive specifications for tools and devices
- 4.4 Describe different designs and their relative merits
- 4.5 Describe the primary function of tools and devices and modifications that can improve performance
- 4.6 Explain the main causes of deterioration of tools and devices and measures to alleviate these causes
- 4.7 Describe methods of maintaining the range of tools and devices

**Unit 440**                    **Build and maintain tools and devices to process coppice and greenwood products**

Supporting information

**Guidance**

Simulation will not be acceptable where the unit is included in qualifications which verify competent performance. Please refer to Lantra's Assessment Strategy for further guidance.



## Unit 441

## Maintain coppice health and productivity

<b>UAN:</b>	<b>M/504/3672</b>
<b>Level:</b>	Level 2
<b>Credit value:</b>	4
<b>GLH:</b>	30
<b>Relationship to NOS:</b>	This unit is linked to Trees and Timber
<b>Endorsement by a sector or regulatory body:</b>	This unit is endorsed by Lantra, the Sector Skills Council for Land and Environment
<b>Aim:</b>	This unit provides the learner with the knowledge and skills required to maintain coppice health and productivity

<b>Learning outcome</b>
The learner will: 1. Be able to work safely
<b>Assessment criteria</b>
The learner can: 1.1 Identify the <b>hazards and risks</b> associated with the working area and the proposed work 1.2 Use appropriate tools, equipment and personal protective equipment (PPE) safely 1.3 Carry out work in accordance with relevant legislation, industry good practice, any additional requirements and maintains health and safety 1.4 Carry out work to minimise environmental damage.
<b>Range</b>
<b>Hazards and risks</b> Complete an appropriate risk assessment

<b>Learning outcome</b>
The learner will: 2. Be able to achieve optimum coppice density and health
<b>Assessment criteria</b>
The learner can: 2.1 Identify areas where stock density can be improved 2.2 Increase <b>coppice density</b> 2.3 Improve site conditions to encourage natural regeneration 2.4 Control <b>vertebrate pest damage</b> using appropriate method 2.5 Control <b>unwanted weed vegetation</b> using appropriate methods.

<b>Range</b>
<b>Coppice density</b> By planting with appropriate stock and tree species increase coppice density by 'layering'
<b>Vertebrate pest damage</b> Using two methods
<b>Unwanted weed vegetation</b> Identify methods of controlling unwanted vegetation.

<b>Learning outcome</b>
The learner will: 3. Know relevant health and safety legislation and industry good practice
<b>Assessment criteria</b>
The learner can: 3.1 Outline the current health and safety legislation, industry good practice and any additional requirements 3.2 Describe how to use and maintain tools, equipment and personal protective equipment 3.3 Describe how environmental damage can be minimised.

<b>Learning outcome</b>
The learner will: 4. Know how to maintain coppice health and productivity
<b>Assessment criteria</b>
The learner can: 4.1 Describe the effects of growing conditions and biodiversity on coppice health

- 4.2 Describe the **optimum coppice density appropriate to species, rotation and location**
- 4.3 Describe methods for **improving coppice density**
- 4.4 Describe the **main woodland sources of damage and their methods of control**
- 4.5 Describe the main **plant species which cause damage and how these can be manipulated to optimise coppice growth**
- 4.6 Describe the **conditions** which affect the choice of appropriate management methods.

### **Range**

#### **Optimum coppice density appropriate to species, rotation and location**

the effect of coppice density on productivity  
 reasons for poor coppice density

#### **Improving coppice density**

Their benefits and appropriate use

#### **Main woodland sources of damage and their methods of control**

Covering: (one of each)

- Vertebrates
- Invertebrates
- Biotic
- Abiotic

#### **Plant species which cause damage and how these can be manipulated to optimise coppice growth**

Three of each

#### **Conditions**

For example economic, site designations, environmental etc.



## **Unit 441            Maintain coppice health and productivity**

### Supporting information

#### **Guidance**

Simulation will not be acceptable where the unit is included in qualifications which verify competent performance. Please refer to Lantra's Assessment Strategy for further guidance.

<b>UAN:</b>	<b>M/601/0262</b>
<b>Level:</b>	Level 2
<b>Credit value:</b>	1
<b>GLH:</b>	8
<b>Relationship to NOS:</b>	This unit is linked to Trees and Timber NOS
<b>Endorsement by a sector or regulatory body:</b>	This unit is endorsed by Lantra, the Sector Skills Council for Land and Environment

<b>Learning outcome</b>
The learner will:
1. Be able to treat and dispose of stumps and roots
<b>Assessment criteria</b>
The learner can:
1.1 Establish the condition of the stumps and roots to be treated
1.2 Locate and protect services and property
1.3 Use treatment methods which are appropriate to the landowner's requirements, legislation, the situation and industry guidelines
1.4 Restore the site to a condition that is acceptable to landowner and specification.

<b>Learning outcome</b>
The learner will:
2. Be able to work safely and minimise environmental damage
<b>Assessment criteria</b>
The learner can:
2.1 Work in a way which maintains health and safety and is consistent with relevant legislation, codes of practice and any additional requirements
2.2 Carry out work in a manner which minimises environmental damage
2.3 Dispose of waste safely and correctly.

<b>Learning outcome</b>
The learner will: 3. Be able to select, use and maintain equipment
<b>Assessment criteria</b>
The learner can: 3.1 Select and use appropriate equipment for this area of work 3.2 Prepare, maintain and store equipment in a safe and effective working condition.

<b>Learning outcome</b>
The learner will: 4. Know how to treat and dispose of stumps
<b>Assessment criteria</b>
The learner can: 4.1 State how to identify, locate and protect services and property and why this is important 4.2 Outline the importance of restoring site to acceptable condition 4.3 Describe a range of methods for stump and root treatment and when these should be used 4.4 Describe how to establish the condition of the stump to be treated.

<b>Learning outcome</b>
The learner will: 5. Know relevant health and safety legislation and environmental good practice
<b>Assessment criteria</b>
The learner can: 5.1 Outline the current health and safety legislation, codes of practice and any additional requirements 5.2 Describe how environmental damage can be minimised 5.3 Describe the correct methods for disposing of waste.

<b>Learning outcome</b>
The learner will: 6. Know the types of equipment required and how to maintain them
<b>Assessment criteria</b>
The learner can: 6.1 Describe the equipment and methods of maintaining the equipment which will be required for the activity.

## **Unit 442            Treat and dispose of stumps and roots**

### **Supporting information**

#### **Guidance**

Simulation will not be acceptable where the unit is included in qualifications which verify competent performance. Please refer to Lantra's Assessment Strategy for further guidance.



<b>UAN:</b>	<b>M/601/1511</b>
<b>Level:</b>	Level 2
<b>Credit value:</b>	6
<b>GLH:</b>	40
<b>Relationship to NOS:</b>	n/a
<b>Endorsement by a sector or regulatory body:</b>	This unit is endorsed by Lantra, the Sector Skills Council for Land and Environment

<b>Learning outcome</b>
The learner will:
1. Spot customer service problems
<b>Assessment criteria</b>
The learner can:
1.1 Listen carefully to customers about any problem they have raised
1.2 Ask customers about the problem to check their understanding
1.3 Recognise repeated problems and alert the appropriate authority
1.4 Share customer feedback with others to identify potential problems before they happen
1.5 Identify problems with systems and procedures before they begin to affect customers.

<b>Learning outcome</b>
The learner will:
2. Pick the best solution to resolve customer service problems
<b>Assessment criteria</b>
The learner can:
2.1 Identify the options for resolving a customer service problem
2.2 Work with others to identify and confirm the options to resolve a customer service problem
2.3 Work out the advantages and disadvantages of each option for their customer and the organisation
2.4 Pick the best option for their customer and the organisation

- |  |
|--|
| 2.5 Identify for their customer other ways that problems may be resolved if they are unable to help. |
|--|

<b>Learning outcome</b>
-------------------------

The learner will:
-------------------

- |   |
|---|
| 3. Take action to resolve customer service problems |
|---|

<b>Assessment criteria</b>
----------------------------

The learner can:
------------------

- |   |
|---|
| 3.1 Discuss and agree the options for solving the problem with their customer                                   |
| 3.2 Take action to implement the option agreed with their customer  |
| 3.3 Work with others and their customer to make sure that any promises related to solving the problem are kept  |
| 3.4 Keep their customer fully informed about what is happening to resolve the problem                           |
| 3.5 Check with their customer to make sure the problem has been resolved to the customer's satisfaction         |
| 3.6 Give clear reasons to their customer when the problem has not been resolved to the customer's satisfaction. |

<b>Learning outcome</b>
-------------------------

The learner will:
-------------------

- |  |
|--|
| 4. Know how to resolve customer service problems |
|--|

<b>Assessment criteria</b>
----------------------------

The learner can:
------------------

- |   |
|---|
| 4.1 Describe organisational procedures and systems for dealing with customer service problems |
| 4.2 Explain how to defuse potentially stressful situations                                    |
| 4.3 Describe how to negotiate   |
| 4.4 Identify the limitations of what they can offer their customer                            |
| 4.5 Describe types of action that may make a customer problem worse and should be avoided.    |



## **Unit 443                  Resolve customer service problems**

Supporting information

### **Guidance**

Simulation will not be acceptable where the unit is included in qualifications which verify competent performance. Please refer to Lantra's Assessment Strategy for further guidance.

<b>UAN:</b>	Y/504/4038
<b>Level:</b>	Level 2
<b>Credit value:</b>	2
<b>GLH:</b>	7
<b>Relationship to NOS:</b>	This unit is linked to Trees and Timber NOS
<b>Endorsement by a sector or regulatory body:</b>	This unit is endorsed by Lantra, the Sector Skills Council for Land and Environment

<b>Learning outcome</b>
The learner will:
1. Be able to prepare a mobile elevated work platform for operation
<b>Assessment criteria</b>
The learner can:
1.1 Identify hazards and risks specific to the site, task and machine
1.2 Rectify hazards and risks specific to site, task and machine
1.3 State the personal protective equipment (PPE) that is required to operate a mobile elevated work platform
1.4 Describe the function of all instruments and controls on the machine
1.5 Explain the meaning of the safety decals on the mobile elevated work platform
1.6 Carry out pre-start checks on the mobile elevated work platform
1.7 State the legal and safety requirements relating to the use or movement of a mobile elevated work platform
1.8 Identify the working load of the mobile elevated work platform
1.9 Rig the mobile elevated work platform for work
1.10 State the requirements for rigging on uneven or soft ground
1.11 State the emergency procedures to be taken in the event of: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• injury to operatives</li> <li>• mechanical failure.</li> </ul>

<b>Learning outcome</b>
The learner will: 2. Be able to operate a mobile elevated work platform
<b>Assessment criteria</b>
The learner can: 2.1 State environmental conditions when a mobile elevated work platform should not be raised 2.2 Operate the mobile elevated work platform safely 2.3 Undertake task from the mobile elevated work platform relevant to normal work situation 2.4 Lower the mobile elevated work platform 2.5 Describe how to perform an emergency descent from a mobile elevated work platform.

<b>Learning outcome</b>
The learner will: 3. Be able to prepare the mobile elevated work platform for transport
<b>Assessment criteria</b>
The learner can: 3.1 Prepare the mobile elevated work platform for transport 3.2 Describe the factors to be considered when cleaning mobile elevated work platforms and reasons for cleaning 3.3 Explain the reasons to inspect the mobile elevated work platform after use.

## **Unit 444            Safe use of a mobile elevated work platform**

### **Supporting information**

#### **Guidance**

Simulation will not be acceptable where the unit is included in qualifications which verify competent performance. Please refer to Lantra's Assessment Strategy for further guidance.

<b>UAN:</b>	<b>R/504/3678</b>
<b>Level:</b>	Level 2
<b>Credit value:</b>	3
<b>GLH:</b>	23
<b>Relationship to NOS:</b>	This unit is linked to Trees and Timber NOS
<b>Endorsement by a sector or regulatory body:</b>	This unit is endorsed by Lantra, the Sector Skills Council for Land and Environment
<b>Aim:</b>	The aim and purpose of this unit is to provide the learner with the knowledge and skills required to handle, transport and prepare a horse(s) to extract wood

<b>Learning outcome</b>
The learner will:
1. Be able to work safely
<b>Assessment criteria</b>
The learner can:
1.1 Identify the <b>hazards and risks</b> associated with the working area and the proposed work
1.2 Use appropriate tools, equipment and personal protective equipment (PPE) safely
1.3 Carry out work in accordance with <b>relevant legislation, industry good practice and promotes health and safety.</b>

<b>Range</b>
<b>Hazards and risks</b> Complete an appropriate risk assessment
<b>Relevant legislation, industry good practice and promotes health and safety</b> Including and animal health and welfare



<b>Learning outcome</b>
The learner will: 2. Be able to prepare horse for timber work
<b>Assessment criteria</b>
The learner can: 2.1 Care for horse in line with relevant welfare requirements throughout transportation 2.2 <b>Prepare the horse for extraction work</b> in line with welfare requirements 2.3 <b>Fit</b> appropriate harness and extraction accessories for wood product extraction 2.4 Handle the horse to maintain control and welfare throughout operations

<b>Range</b>
<b>Prepare the horse for extraction work</b> In relation to load/during and unloading throughout transportation
<b>Fit</b> Select Check Prepare Fit.

<b>Learning outcome</b>
The learner will: 3. Know relevant health and safety legislation and industry good practice
<b>Assessment criteria</b>
The learner can: 3.1 Outline the current health and safety legislation, industry good practice and any additional requirements 3.2 Describe how to use and maintain tools, equipment and personal protective equipment (PPE).

<b>Learning outcome</b>
The learner will: 4. Know how to prepare horse for timber work
<b>Assessment criteria</b>

<p>The learner can:</p> <p>4.1 Describe <b>how to prepare for emergencies</b> relevant to the site</p> <p>4.2 State the implications of terrain, ground conditions, season, weather and timber type on handling, transporting and preparing the horse</p> <p>4.3 Describe the procedures involved in transporting and preparing horses for extraction work</p> <p>4.4 State how to fit <b>various types of harnesses</b></p> <p>4.5 Describe the advantages and disadvantages of the different <b>types of harnesses</b></p> <p>4.6 State how to handle horses safely and with regard to their welfare</p> <p>4.7 Describe how to provide for, and maintain, horse welfare in relation to the provision of food, water and rest</p> <p>4.8 Describe the capabilities of the horse used, in relation to:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• fitness</li> <li>• temperament</li> <li>• experience</li> <li>• size</li> <li>• weight</li> <li>• type of extraction equipment used.</li> </ul>
--

<p><b>Range</b></p> <p><b>How to prepare for emergencies</b> Provide instances/examples of such need</p> <p><b>Various types of harnesses</b> Various types: other than those used in practical the need to carry out checks and maintenance on equipment</p> <p><b>Types of harnesses</b> (eg Scandinavian, trace, plough, cart)</p>
---



## **Unit 445            Prepare horse for timber work**

### **Supporting information**

#### **Guidance**

Simulation will not be acceptable where the unit is included in qualifications which verify competent performance. Please refer to Lantra's Assessment Strategy for further guidance.

<b>UAN:</b>	<b>R/504/3647</b>
<b>Level:</b>	Level 2
<b>Credit value:</b>	2
<b>GLH:</b>	15
<b>Relationship to NOS:</b>	This unit is linked to Trees and Timber NOS
<b>Endorsement by a sector or regulatory body:</b>	This unit is endorsed by Lantra, the Sector Skills Council for Land and Environment
<b>Aim:</b>	The aim of this unit is to provide the learner with the knowledge and skills required to manually plant and establish trees.

<b>Learning outcome</b>
The learner will:
1. Be able to work safely
<b>Assessment criteria</b>
The learner can:
1.1 Identify the hazards and risks associated with the working area and the proposed work
1.2 Use appropriate tools, equipment and Personal Protective Equipment
1.3 Carry out work specification in accordance with relevant legislation, codes of practice, any additional requirements and maintains health and safety.

<b>Learning outcome</b>
The learner will:
2. Be able to plant trees
<b>Assessment criteria</b>
The learner can:
2.1 Ensure the bio-security and the condition of the tree before transporting and establishment
2.2 Check condition and species of tree in line with planting specification
2.3 Handle plant material to minimise damage and optimise growth
2.4 Plant trees in line with the planting specification

2.5 Provide **support and protection** to trees appropriate to size of stock and specification.

**Range**

**Support and protection**

Provide any necessary/appropriate after care

**Learning outcome**

The learner will:

3. Know relevant health and safety legislation and industry good practice

**Assessment criteria**

The learner can:

- 3.1 Outline the current health and safety legislation, industry good practice and any additional requirements
- 3.2 Describe how to use and maintain tools, equipment and Personal Protective Equipment.

**Learning outcome**

The learner will:

4. Know how to plant trees

**Assessment criteria**

The learner can:

- 4.1 Describe how to choose the right quality, compatibility, size and species of **stock**
- 4.2 Describe **planting support and protection methods** for a variety of trees
- 4.3 Describe how to handle and plant different types of plant material to maintain stock in good condition
- 4.4 State how to check the condition and bio-security of trees to ensure they are fit for establishment
- 4.5 Describe **aftercare** requirements of newly planted trees to ensure successful establishment
- 4.6 State why planting records should be kept.

**Range**

**Stock**

And to recognise health stock

**Planting support and protection methods**

State how to select suitable support systems where required

**Aftercare**

Including beat up requirements.

## **Unit 446          Plant trees**

### Supporting information

#### **Guidance**

Simulation will not be acceptable where the unit is included in qualifications which verify competent performance. Please refer to Lantra's Assessment Strategy for further guidance.



## Unit 447

# Prepare and operate hand fed machinery to process timber on site

<b>UAN:</b>	<b>R/504/3681</b>
<b>Level:</b>	Level 2
<b>Credit value:</b>	5
<b>GLH:</b>	38
<b>Relationship to NOS:</b>	This unit is linked to Trees and Timber NOS
<b>Endorsement by a sector or regulatory body:</b>	This unit is endorsed by Lantra, the Sector Skills Council for Land and Environment
<b>Aim:</b>	<p>The aim and purpose of this unit is to provide the learner with the knowledge and skills required to process timber using hand fed processing machinery.</p> <p>Hand-fed machinery includes mobile saw bench, firewood processor, stake splitter, pointing machine, peeler (de-barker) and woodchippers designed for chipping timber to a quality specification The machines will be fed by hand</p>

<b>Learning outcome</b>
The learner will: 1. Be able to work safely
<b>Assessment criteria</b>
The learner can: 1.1 Identify the <b>hazards and risks</b> associated with the working area and the proposed work 1.2 Use appropriate <b>tools, equipment and Personal Protective Equipment</b> 1.3 Carry out work specification in accordance with relevant legislation, industry good practice and maintains health and safety 1.4 Carry out work to minimise environmental damage

<b>Range</b>
<p><b>Hazards and risks</b></p> <p>Carry out a site risk assessment</p> <p>Identify route</p> <p>Assess the Operational and environmental requirements for the site</p> <p><b>Tools, equipment and Personal Protective Equipment</b></p> <p>Store machinery, fuels and equipment securely on site</p>

<b>Learning outcome</b>
<p>The learner will:</p> <p>2. Be able to prepare machine for processing</p>
<b>Assessment criteria</b>
<p>The learner can:</p> <p>2.1 Carry out <b>pre and post-start checks</b>, to test all operating functions prior to processing timber</p> <p>2.2 Plan <b>work and the worksite</b> and maintain safe working areas to operate machinery safely and efficiently.</p>

<b>Range</b>
<p><b>Pre- and post-start checks</b></p> <p>Carry out pre-planned visual inspection/checks on machinery</p> <p>Carry out a practical check on all operating functions of the equipment including safety devices.</p> <p><b>Work and the worksite</b></p> <p>With minimal damage to the worksite, standing trees, tracks, roads, drains and the wider environment in accordance with the site and job specification.</p> <p>Manoeuvre or direct manoeuvring of machine into working position and set in - feed and discharge equipment.</p> <p>Utilise additional safeguards such as barriers, banksman and/or additional signs when operating machine and comply with safety distances from e.g. adjacent roads and tracks or where others are working.</p>

<b>Learning outcome</b>
<p>The learner will:</p> <p>3. Be able to process timber on site</p>
<b>Assessment criteria</b>
<p>The learner can:</p> <p>3.1 <b>Manoeuvre the machinery</b> to ensure safe and efficient working</p>

- 3.2 **Position the machinery** to ensure safe and efficient working
- 3.3 **Process timber** in accordance with the job specification
- 3.4 Move timber products
- 3.5 **Stack timber products** safely and in a position which facilitates subsequent handling

**Range**

**Manoeuvre the machinery**

Manoeuvre the machine on site in a safe and effective way.  
Safely and efficiently in relation to the materials to be processed and the stacking area for products

**Position the machinery**

Set up and position timber and product handling equipment as appropriate to the machine

**Process timber**

Check that accumulation of converted timber and by-products is kept within specified limits and does not affect the safety and efficiency of the processing and does not affect any trees, tracks, roads, drains or the wider environment

**Stack timber products**

Present by-products for subsequent handling in accordance with job specification and restore the site to an acceptable condition

**Learning outcome**

The learner will:

- 4. Know how to prepare machine for processing on site

**Assessment criteria**

The learner can:

- 4.1 Describe the **safety requirements, routine and functional checks** required for machine and operator protection
- 4.2 Describe the procedure for hitching and unhitching or loading and unloading the machine.

**Range**

**Safety requirements, routine and functional checks**

Such as brakes, guards and other safety devices.  
State the need for carrying out routine operator checks and basic maintenance.  
Identify the function of all operating controls for drive unit and processing equipment.

State how to identify damage and wear to processing blades/knives  
how to change, set and sharpen blades and knives.

**Learning outcome**

The learner will:

- 5. Know how to process timber on site

**Assessment criteria**

The learner can:

- 5.1 Describe the capabilities and limitations of the machinery used in relation to the diameter and quality of timber to be converted
- 5.2 Explain the implications of terrain, ground conditions, season and weather on working and stacking areas, and on using machinery
- 5.3 State the implications of converting long timber on machine operation
- 5.4 Outline methods of grading, stacking and handling products and by-products, by hand and with the aid of handling machinery.

**Learning outcome**

The learner will:

- 6. Know relevant health and safety legislation

**Assessment criteria**

The learner can:

- 6.1 Outline the current **health and safety legislation, codes of practice and any additional requirements**
- 6.2 Describe the types of **records** that may be required for management and legislative purposes.

**Range**

**Health and safety legislation, codes of practice and any additional requirements**

Describe the principles of safe manual handling techniques whilst converting timber with processing machinery.

Describe how environmental damage can be minimised.

Describe the implications of working at height in relation to routine operator checks and basic maintenance.

Describe causes of, and how to prevent potential pollution and environmental damage when preparing and using loader - fed processor.

Describe how to minimise any pollution incident including the pollution control equipment that should be available on site and to whom any incidents should be reported.

Identify current guidelines on machinery operation, risk zones and safety clearances from overhead electricity conductors what to do in the event of contact with power lines.

**Records**

The importance of accurate record keeping, LOLER, PUWER.

**Unit 447**                    **Prepare and operate hand fed  
machinery to process timber on  
site**

Supporting information

**Guidance**

Simulation will not be acceptable where the unit is included in qualifications which verify competent performance. Please refer to Lantra's Assessment Strategy for further guidance.

<b>UAN:</b>	<b>R/504/3695</b>
<b>Level:</b>	Level 2
<b>Credit value:</b>	2
<b>GLH:</b>	15
<b>Relationship to NOS:</b>	This unit is linked to Trees and Timber NOS
<b>Endorsement by a sector or regulatory body:</b>	This unit is endorsed by Lantra, the Sector Skills Council for Land and Environment
<b>Aim:</b>	The aim and purpose of this unit is to provide the learner with the knowledge and skills to clear sites in preparation for planting

<b>Learning outcome</b>
The learner will: 1. Be able to work safely
<b>Assessment criteria</b>
The learner can: 1.1 Identify the hazards and risks associated with the working area and the proposed work 1.2 Use appropriate tools, equipment and Personal Protective Equipment 1.3 Carry out work in accordance with relevant legislation, industry good practice and promotes health and safety 1.4 Carry out work to minimise environmental damage 1.5 Dispose of waste in line with legislation and codes of practice.

<b>Learning outcome</b>
The learner will: 2. Be able to clear sites for planting
<b>Assessment criteria</b>
The learner can: 2.1 Select appropriate clearance methods in line with specification and the site conditions 2.2 Clear the site taking into account available resources, weather and ground conditions

<b>Learning outcome</b>
The learner will: 3. Know relevant health and safety legislation and industry good practice
<b>Assessment criteria</b>
The learner can: 3.1 Outline the current health and safety legislation, industry good practice and any additional requirements 3.2 Describe how to use and maintain tools, equipment and Personal Protective Equipment 3.3 Describe how environmental damage can be minimised 3.4 Describe the correct methods for disposing of waste.

<b>Learning outcome</b>
The learner will: 4. Know how to clear sites for planting
<b>Assessment criteria</b>
The learner can: 4.1 State how to deal with overhead or ground obstructions 4.2 Describe the different <b>methods for clearing sites</b> 4.3 Outline how to interpret specifications and select appropriate clearance methods 4.4 State how the site conditions affect the selection of clearance methods.

<b>Range</b>
<b>Methods for clearing sites</b> covering <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Chemical spraying</li> <li>• Burning</li> <li>• Cutting</li> <li>• Chipping</li> <li>• Stump removal</li> <li>• Brash raking</li> <li>• Brash baling.</li> </ul>



## **Unit 448**            **Clear sites for planting**

### Supporting information

#### **Guidance**

Simulation will not be acceptable where the unit is included in qualifications which verify competent performance. Please refer to Lantra's Assessment Strategy for further guidance.

## Unit 449

## Prepare a safe working area for tree work operations

<b>UAN:</b>	<b>R/504/3700</b>
<b>Level:</b>	Level 2
<b>Credit value:</b>	3
<b>GLH:</b>	23
<b>Relationship to NOS:</b>	This unit is linked to Trees and Timber NOS
<b>Endorsement by a sector or regulatory body:</b>	This unit is endorsed by Lantra, the Sector Skills Council for Land and Environment

<b>Learning outcome</b>
The learner will: 1. Be able to work safely
<b>Assessment criteria</b>
The learner can: 1.1 Identify the hazards and risks associated with the working area and the proposed work 1.2 Use appropriate tools, equipment and Personal Protective Equipment 1.3 Carry out work in accordance with relevant legislation, industry good practice and promotes health and safety 1.4 Carry out work to minimise environmental damage 1.5 Dispose of waste in line with legislation and codes of practice.

<b>Learning outcome</b>
The learner will: 2. Be able to Prepare and maintain a safe working area
<b>Assessment criteria</b>
The learner can: 2.1 Implement appropriate <b>working methods</b> in accordance with the risks.

<b>Range</b>
<b>Working methods</b>

Covers fuelling and disposal to ensure safe and efficient working practices.

<b>Learning outcome</b>
The learner will: 3. Know relevant health and safety legislation and industry good practice
<b>Assessment criteria</b>
The learner can: 3.1 Outline the current health and safety legislation, industry good practice and any additional requirements 3.2 Describe how to use and maintain tools, equipment and Personal Protective Equipment 3.3 Describe how environmental damage can be minimised 3.4 Describe the correct methods for disposing of waste.

<b>Learning outcome</b>
The learner will: 4. Know how to Prepare and maintain a safe working area
<b>Assessment criteria</b>
The learner can: 4.1 State the key elements of a <b>method statement</b> 4.2 State the correct <b>location and positioning of warning signs and access controls</b> 4.3 Describe how to effectively lay out area 4.4 Explain how <b>species and condition of trees</b> affect work 4.5 Identify the responsibilities of the landowner.

<b>Range</b>
<b>Method statement</b> Manage the safe use and storage on site of climbing aids, pruning tools etc.
<b>Location and positioning of warning signs and access controls</b> Signage of highways etc.
<b>Species and condition of trees</b> Environmental controls/impacts aspects i.e. bats, badgers, water courses, noise, fauna, flora etc.

## **Unit 449            Prepare a safe working area for tree work operations**

### **Supporting information**

#### **Guidance**

Simulation will not be acceptable where the unit is included in qualifications which verify competent performance. Please refer to Lantra's Assessment Strategy for further guidance.

<b>UAN:</b>	T/504/0319
<b>Level:</b>	Level 2
<b>Credit value:</b>	1
<b>GLH:</b>	8
<b>Relationship to NOS:</b>	This unit is linked to Trees and Timber NOS
<b>Endorsement by a sector or regulatory body:</b>	This unit is endorsed by Lantra, the Sector Skills Council for Land and Environment
<b>Aim:</b>	The aim and purpose of this unit is to provide the learner with the knowledge and skill to cross-cut timber using a chainsaw

<b>Learning outcome</b>
The learner will:
1. Be able to work safely
<b>Assessment criteria</b>
The learner can:
1.1 Identify the <b>hazards and risks</b> associated with the working area and the proposed work
1.2 Use appropriate <b>tools, equipment and personal protective equipment (PPE)</b>
1.3 Work in a way which maintains health and safety and is consistent with relevant legislation and industry good practice
1.4 Carry out work to <b>minimise environmental damage</b> .

<b>Range</b>
<b>Hazards and risks</b>
3 hazards and the associated risks with the working area. 3 hazards and the associated risks with the proposed work.
<b>Tools, equipment and personal protective equipment (PPE)</b>
INDG317; AFAG301
<b>Minimise environmental damage</b>
Check the working area for potential (negative) environmental damage Report finding(s) as appropriate

Carry out any required control measure(s).

**Learning outcome**

The learner will:

2. Be able to cross-cut timber using a chainsaw

**Assessment criteria**

The learner can:

- 2.1 Carry out **pre-start checks and setting of the machine** for use
- 2.2 Inspect timber to identify tension and compression
- 2.3 Demonstrate safe starting of the chainsaw
- 2.4 **Cross-cut timber** to length using a chainsaw in accordance with the job specification
- 2.5 Use appropriate boring cuts to initiate either tension or compression cuts
- 2.6 **Stack produce** for subsequent operations using appropriate aids and tools
- 2.7 Check timber is in an appropriate and safe position
- 2.8 Clean and tidy working area.

**Range**

**Pre-start checks and setting of the machine**

INDG317; Operators handbook

Oil and fuel mix

**Cross-cut timber**

AFAG301; AFAG304

**Stack produce**

Stacking must be tidy.

AFAG304.

INDG145.

Manual Handling Operations Regulations 1992.

**Learning outcome**

The learner will:

3. Know relevant health and safety legislation and industry good practice

**Assessment criteria**

The learner can:

- 3.1 Outline the **key health and safety legislation and industry good practice**

- 3.2 Outline the **emergency planning procedures** relevant to the working area
- 3.3 Describe how to use and maintain equipment
- 3.4 Describe how **environmental damage can be minimised**.

**Range**

**Key health and safety legislation and industry good practice**

Health and Safety at Work Act 1974  
 Provision and Use of Work Equipment Regulations 1998 (PUWER 98);  
 Arboriculture Forestry Advisory Group (AFAG)

**Emergency planning procedures**

AFAG802 – paragraph 16:  
 2 emergency procedures

**Use and maintain equipment**

Arboriculture Forestry Advisory Group (AFAG)

**Environmental damage can be minimised**

1 cause; 1 prevention.

**Learning outcome**

The learner will:

- 4. Know how to cross-cut timber using a chainsaw

**Assessment criteria**

The learner can:

- 4.1 Describe tension and compression in timber
- 4.2 State **recognised methods** required to cross-cut timber above guide bar length
- 4.3 Describe how to **safely move timber**:
  - By hand
  - With the use of aid tools
  - Mechanical assistance
- 4.4 Explain how to **grade and present logs** for extraction and further processing
- 4.5 State **precautions** to take to avoid uncontrolled timber movement
- 4.6 Describe how to apply **ergonomic working methods**.

**Range****Recognised methods**

2 examples

**Safely move timber**

2 examples of each

**Grade and present logs**

1 of each (grade, present)

**Precautions**

1 precaution

**Ergonomic working methods**

2 methods

INDG145.



## **Unit 450                      Cross-cut timber using a chainsaw**

### **Supporting information**

#### **Guidance**

Maximum recommended guide bar length 380mm (15")

Timber for cross-cutting must be between 200-380mm Cross-cut:

Severing cuts of minimum 10; maximum 20

Under tension/compression minimum 4 maximum 8

Demonstration of a bore cut

Refer to Lantra SSCs assessment strategy for further details

<b>UAN:</b>	<i>J/504/3645</i>
<b>Level:</b>	Level 2
<b>Credit value:</b>	3
<b>GLH:</b>	23
<b>Relationship to NOS:</b>	This unit is linked to Environmental Conservation NOS
<b>Endorsement by a sector or regulatory body:</b>	This unit is endorsed by Lantra, the Sector Skills Council for Land and Environment
<b>Aim:</b>	The aim of this unit is to provide the learner with the knowledge and skills required to maintain an open drainage system.

<b>Learning outcome</b>
The learner will:
1. Be able to work safely
<b>Assessment criteria</b>
The learner can:
1.1 Identify the hazards and risks associated with the working area and the proposed work
1.2 Use appropriate tools, equipment and Personal Protective Equipment
1.3 Carry out work specification in accordance with relevant legislation, industry good practice and maintains health and safety
1.4 Carry out work to minimise environmental damage
1.5 Dispose of waste in line with legislation and codes of practice.

<b>Learning outcome</b>
The learner will:
2. Be able to maintain open drainage systems
<b>Assessment criteria</b>
The learner can:
2.1 Assess whether drains are still required
2.2 Maintain drains to the given specification
2.3 Make effective use of the available resources.

<b>Learning outcome</b>
The learner will: 3. Know relevant health and safety legislation and industry good practice
<b>Assessment criteria</b>
The learner can: 3.1 Outline the current health and safety legislation, industry good practice and any additional requirements 3.2 Describe how to use and maintain tools, equipment and Personal Protective Equipment 3.3 Describe how environmental damage can be minimised 3.4 Describe the correct methods for disposing of waste.

<b>Learning outcome</b>
The learner will: 4. Know how to maintain open drainage systems
<b>Assessment criteria</b>
The learner can: 4.1 Outline the emergency planning procedures relevant to the work area 4.2 Describe how to interpret plans and <b>specification</b> to maintain drainage system 4.3 Describe how to clear drains and re-dig collapsed sections of drains 4.4 Describe how to maintain drains in a range of soil types and situations 4.5 Describe how to excavate material amongst standing trees 4.6 Explain techniques that can be used for minor de-bogging 4.7 Describe how to recognise specified aspects of the site that should be preserved 4.8 State the implications of <b>environmental factors</b> .

<b>Range</b>
<b>Specification</b> depth grade flow rate treatment of excavated material tolerance of specification
<b>Environmental factors</b> terrain soil texture soil type

structure  
season  
weather  
flow rate of drainage system.

## **Unit 451            Maintain open drainage systems**

### **Supporting information**

#### **Guidance**

Simulation will not be acceptable where the unit is included in qualifications which verify competent performance. Please refer to Lantra's Assessment Strategy for further guidance.

<b>UAN:</b>	<b>K/504/3654</b>
<b>Level:</b>	Level 2
<b>Credit value:</b>	1
<b>GLH:</b>	8
<b>Relationship to NOS:</b>	This unit is linked to Trees and Timber NOS
<b>Endorsement by a sector or regulatory body:</b>	This unit is endorsed by Lantra, the Sector Skills Council for Land and Environment
<b>Aim:</b>	<p>This unit provides the learner with the knowledge and skills for ameliorating soil under trees. This may involve single trees or groups of trees and may take place in urban or rural conditions. Soil remediation is important on a range of sites including those bring developed.</p> <p>This unit relates to the following application or contexts:</p> <p>Working to the following types of job specification:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Treatment of single trees</li> <li>• Treatment of groups of trees</li> <li>• Improving compacted soil</li> <li>• Improving the soil chemical and biological suitability.</li> </ul>

<b>Learning outcome</b>
The learner will:
1. Be able to work safely
<b>Assessment criteria</b>
The learner can:
1.1 Identify the hazards and risks associated with the working area and the proposed work
1.2 Use appropriate tools, equipment and Personal Protective Equipment
1.3 Carry out work in accordance with relevant legislation, industry good practice and promotes health and safety
1.4 Carry out work to minimise environmental damage.

<b>Learning outcome</b>
The learner will: 2. Be able to ameliorate soil for tree health
<b>Assessment criteria</b>
The learner can: 2.1 Assess soil conditions to determine and recommend suitable amelioration techniques 2.2 Advise appropriate person as to the likely outcome of amelioration techniques 2.3 Carry out agreed site amelioration 2.4 Recommend suitable aftercare to prevent the soil condition re-occurring in the future.

<b>Learning outcome</b>
The learner will: 3. Know relevant health and safety legislation and industry good practice
<b>Assessment criteria</b>
The learner can: 3.1 Outline the current health and safety legislation, industry good practice and any additional requirements 3.2 Describe how to use and maintain tools, equipment and Personal Protective Equipment 3.3 Describe how environmental damage can be minimized.

<b>Learning outcome</b>
The learner will: 4. Know how to ameliorate soil for tree health
<b>Assessment criteria</b>
The learner can: 4.1 Describe the signs and symptoms in the tree and/or the soil that would suggest the need for soil amelioration 4.2 Describe the <b>methods</b> of soil amelioration and when each would be appropriate 4.3 State the physiological problems of the tree and what the proposed treatment will achieve 4.4 Describe the implications of seasonal and ground conditions for your work.

<b>Range</b>
<b>Methods</b> mulching feeding top dressing

pneumatic de-compaction  
air spade/air injection  
mycorrhizal injection.



## **Unit 452                  Soil amelioration for tree health**

### **Supporting information**

#### **Guidance**

Simulation will not be acceptable where the unit is included in qualifications which verify competent performance. Please refer to Lantra's Assessment Strategy for further guidance.

<b>UAN:</b>	T/504/3656
<b>Level:</b>	Level 2
<b>Credit value:</b>	2
<b>GLH:</b>	15
<b>Relationship to NOS:</b>	This unit is linked to Horticulture NOS
<b>Endorsement by a sector or regulatory body:</b>	This unit is endorsed by Lantra, the Sector Skills Council for Land and Environment
<b>Aim:</b>	The aim of the unit is to provide the learner with the knowledge and skills required when taking delivery of or storing plants and materials.

<b>Learning outcome</b>
The learner will:
1. Be able to work safely
<b>Assessment criteria</b>
The learner can:
1.1 Carry out work in accordance with relevant legislation, industry good practice and promotes health and safety
1.2 Dispose of waste in line with legislation and codes of practice.

<b>Learning outcome</b>
The learner will:
2. Be able to take delivery and store plants and materials
<b>Assessment criteria</b>
The learner can:
2.1 Check the <b>condition</b> of all plants and materials and that they are as detailed in the specification
2.2 Transport plants and materials in a manner which minimises damage and ensures safety
2.3 Store plants and materials in a manner which ensures safety and security
2.4 Record information clearly and accurately.

<b>Range</b>
<b>Condition</b> check the condition of plants and materials where appropriate report any defects in plants and materials to the relevant person

<b>Learning outcome</b>
The learner will: 3. Know relevant health and safety legislation and industry good practice
<b>Assessment criteria</b>
The learner can: 3.1 Outline the current health and safety legislation, industry good practice and any additional requirements 3.2 Describe the correct methods for disposing of waste.

<b>Learning outcome</b>
The learner will: 4. Know how to take delivery or and store plants and materials
<b>Assessment criteria</b>
The learner can: 4.1 State how to, and the importance of assessing the <b>condition of plants and materials against specification</b> 4.2 Describe how to recognise healthy plants 4.3 Describe the actions to take if the plants do not meet the specification or are in a poor condition 4.4 State how to handle and store different types of <b>plants, stock and materials</b> to maintain them in good condition 4.5 Describe how to safely and securely transport and <b>store</b> plants and materials 4.6 Describe the appropriate <b>records</b> to be kept and their significance.

<b>Range</b>
<b>Condition of plants and materials against specification</b> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• plant species</li> <li>• plant type</li> <li>• plant sizes</li> <li>• plant condition</li> </ul>
<b>Plants, stock and materials</b> Types of plants and stock <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• bare root</li> <li>• root balled</li> </ul>

- containerised

How to avoid plant shock and damage when handling, transporting and storing

### **Store**

- cold storage
- heeling in
- straw bale
- co-extruded bags
- canopy store

### **Records**

Records to include:

- plant passports
- delivery notes
- legislative records.

## **Unit 453**            **Take delivery of and store plants and materials**

### Supporting information

#### **Guidance**

Simulation will not be acceptable where the unit is included in qualifications which verify competent performance. Please refer to Lantra's Assessment Strategy for further guidance.

<b>UAN:</b>	T/504/3687
<b>Level:</b>	Level 2
<b>Credit value:</b>	5
<b>GLH:</b>	38
<b>Relationship to NOS:</b>	This unit is linked to Trees and Timber NOS
<b>Endorsement by a sector or regulatory body:</b>	This unit is endorsed by Lantra, the Sector Skills Council for Land and Environment
<b>Aim:</b>	<p>The aim and purpose of this unit is to provide the learner with the knowledge and skills to attach / load and detach / unload timber from a skidder</p> <p>The unit is not for ATV's or similar small scale extraction machinery as these are covered other units.</p>

<b>Learning outcome</b>
The learner will:
1. Be able to work safely
<b>Assessment criteria</b>
The learner can:
1.1 Identify the <b>hazards and risks</b> associated with the working area and the proposed work
1.2 Use <b>appropriate tools, equipment and Personal Protective Equipment</b>
1.3 Carry out work in accordance with relevant legislation, industry good practice and maintains health and safety
1.4 Carry out work to minimise environmental damage.

<b>Range</b>
<b>Hazards and risks</b>
Carry out a site risk assessment
Identify route
Assess the Operational and environmental requirements for the site
Plan safe and efficient felling

### **Tools, equipment and Personal Protective Equipment**

Store machinery, fuels and equipment securely on site.

#### **Learning outcome**

The learner will:

2. Be able to drive and manoeuvre a skidder

#### **Assessment criteria**

The learner can:

- 2.1 Carry out pre and post start checks to test all operating functions of the equipment
- 2.2 Drive the machine on site in a safe and effective way
- 2.3 Manoeuvre the machine on site in a safe and effective way.

#### **Learning outcome**

The learner will:

3. Be able to attach and detach timber on skidder

#### **Assessment criteria**

The learner can:

- 3.1 **Position machine** to uplift timber
- 3.2 Identify **timber for extraction**
- 3.3 Uplift timber for extraction
- 3.4 **Use skidder** attachment to bunch products safely and effectively
- 3.5 Maintain the security of equipment when using skidder attachment.

#### **Range**

##### **Position machine**

Line skidder

Grapple skidder

##### **Timber for extraction**

according to specification

select timber for extraction

maintain safe and effective skidding whilst maintaining stability of skidder

##### **Use skidder**

Limit size of load to avoid damage to product

Position the timber in correct place at landing area for subsequent handling

Unload/detach load from the machine safely and effectively.

<b>Learning outcome</b>
The learner will: 4. Know how to prepare, drive and manoeuvre machinery
<b>Assessment criteria</b>
The learner can: 4.1 State the <b>safety requirements, routine and functional checks</b> required for machine and operator protection 4.2 Describe <b>safe driving techniques</b> that should be used on site 4.3 Describe the <b>implications</b> of terrain, ground conditions, season, weather and tree condition on planning access routes and driving the machine.

<b>Range</b>
<b>Safety requirements, routine and functional checks</b> Such as OPS, ROPS and FOPS and other safety devices
<b>Safe driving techniques</b> To reduce damage to the ground, any remaining standing trees or the wider environment to within specified limits
<b>implications</b> Describe how to use recovery and de-bogging techniques in a variety of situations.

<b>Learning outcome</b>
The learner will: 5. Know how to attach and detach timber on skidder
<b>Assessment criteria</b>
The learner can: 5.1 Outline the <b>capabilities and capacity limitations</b> of the skidder when attaching and loading timber 5.2 Describe how to recognise and select type and species of timber according to specification 5.3 Explain how <b>produce might be segregated and/or graded</b> to meet required specification 5.4 Explain how and when to use a logging blade or butt plate to accumulate extracted timber.



<b>Range</b>
<p><b>Capabilities and capacity limitations</b></p> <p>State the slope limitations on attaching/loading timber Outline the implications of loading/attaching and unloading/detaching poles butt first and tip first</p> <p>Describe how to use bearers when</p> <p>State how to ensure that limit size of load on skidder does not cause:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• damage to product</li> <li>• instability of machine</li> <li>• loss of load</li> <li>• damage to standing trees or the wider environment, including roads and tracks</li> </ul> <p><b>Produce might be segregated and/or graded</b></p> <p>And why.</p>

<b>Learning outcome</b>
<p>The learner will:</p> <p>6. Know relevant health and safety legislation and industry good practice</p>
<b>Assessment criteria</b>
<p>The learner can:</p> <p>6.1 Outline the <b>current health and safety legislation, codes of practice and any additional requirements</b></p> <p>6.2 Describe the types of <b>records</b> that may be required for management and legislative purposes.</p>

<b>Range</b>
<p><b>Current health and safety legislation, codes of practice and any additional requirements</b></p> <p>Outline additional safeguards that are necessary when timber is accumulated adjacent to roads or tracks</p> <p><b>Records</b></p> <p>LOLER</p> <p>PUWER and the importance of accurate record keeping.</p>

## **Unit 454            Prepare, drive and operate a skidder**

### **Supporting information**

#### **Guidance**

Simulation will not be acceptable where the unit is included in qualifications which verify competent performance. Please refer to Lantra's Assessment Strategy for further guidance.

<b>UAN:</b>	<b>T/504/3690</b>
<b>Level:</b>	Level 2
<b>Credit value:</b>	2
<b>GLH:</b>	15
<b>Relationship to NOS:</b>	This unit is linked to Trees and Timber NOS
<b>Endorsement by a sector or regulatory body:</b>	This unit is endorsed by Lantra, the Sector Skills Council for Land and Environment
<b>Aim:</b>	The aim of this unit is to provide the learner with the knowledge and skills required to operate a grapple loader to load and unload a range of timber products in forestry and woodland situations.

<b>Learning outcome</b>
The learner will:
1. Be able to work safely
<b>Assessment criteria</b>
The learner can:
1.1 Identify the <b>hazards and risks</b> associated with the working area and the proposed work
1.2 Use appropriate <b>tools, equipment and Personal Protective Equipment</b>
1.3 Carry out work in accordance with relevant legislation, industry good practice and maintains health and safety
1.4 Carry out work to minimise environmental damage.

<b>Range</b>
<b>Hazards and risks</b>
Carry out a site risk assessment
Identify route
Assess the Operational and environmental requirements for the site
Plan safe and efficient felling
<b>Tools, equipment and Personal Protective Equipment</b>
Store machinery, fuels and equipment securely on site.

<b>Learning outcome</b>
The learner will: 2. Be able to operate a grapple loader
<b>Assessment criteria</b>
The learner can: 2.1 Position <b>machine for loading</b> 2.2 Use machine to <b>load/feed wood products</b> 2.3 Grade products to facilitate subsequent handling, processing or uplift for onward dispatch 2.4 Separate products to <b>facilitate subsequent handling, processing or uplift for onward dispatch</b> 2.5 <b>Stack produce</b> flush to a safe and stable height and condition.

<b>Range</b>
<b>Machine for loading</b> Assess the operational and environmental requirements for the site and plan for the positioning
<b>Load/feed wood products</b> Maintain the security of the machinery on site and when operating
<b>Facilitate subsequent handling, processing or uplift for onward dispatch</b> Use the loader to flush wood products to job specification
<b>Stack produce</b> As per current, relevant industry-recognised guidance.

<b>Learning outcome</b>
The learner will: 3. Know relevant health and safety legislation and industry good practice
<b>Assessment criteria</b>
The learner can: 3.1 Outline the current <b>health and safety legislation, codes of practice and any additional requirements</b> 3.2 Explain the importance of good teamwork and communication within the working environment 3.3 Describe the types of <b>records</b> that may be required for management and legislative purposes.

<b>Range</b>
<b>Health and safety legislation, codes of practice and any additional requirements</b> Describe how environmental damage can be minimised
<b>Records</b> LOLER PUWER and the importance of accurate record keeping.

<b>Learning outcome</b>
The learner will: 4. Know how to operate a grapple loader
<b>Assessment criteria</b>
The learner can: 4.1 Explain the capabilities and limitations of the loader when loading and unloading 4.2 Describe different methods of loading and unloading long logs poles or tree lengths 4.3 Summarise safe stacking heights, stability of stacks and signing requirements 4.4 State how to interpret products specifications 4.5 Describe how to segregate and grade produce to meet required specification 4.6 Describe how to recognise types of timber and species from converted produce.

# Unit 455      Operate a grapple loader

## Supporting information

### **Guidance**

Simulation will not be acceptable where the unit is included in qualifications which verify competent performance. Please refer to Lantra's Assessment Strategy for further guidance.

<b>UAN:</b>	Y/501/6353
<b>Level:</b>	Level 2
<b>Credit value:</b>	3
<b>GLH:</b>	23
<b>Relationship to NOS:</b>	This unit is linked to Trees and Timber NOS
<b>Endorsement by a sector or regulatory body:</b>	This unit is endorsed by Lantra, the Sector Skills Council for Land and Environment

<b>Learning outcome</b>
The learner will:
1. Be able to maintain health, safety and security in the workplace
<b>Assessment criteria</b>
The learner can:
1.1 Identify health and safety risks in relation to the workplace covering the following: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• people</li> <li>• equipment and materials</li> <li>• the work area</li> </ul>
1.2 Carry out specified measures to control risks and keep the appropriate people fully informed.
1.3 Seek guidance on measures to control unfamiliar risks arising from non-routine work situations
1.4 Relay health and safety information to others in a manner likely to be understood
1.5 Take the appropriate action without delay as soon as an emergency is suspected
1.6 Dispose of hazardous and non-hazardous waste safely and appropriately
1.7 Maintain the security of the workplace in accordance with organisational requirements.

<b>Learning outcome</b>
The learner will: 2. Be able to use equipment and materials safely
<b>Assessment criteria</b>
The learner can: 2.1 Use equipment and materials in accordance with manufacturers' instructions and any organisational training 2.2 Transport any equipment and materials safely and store them correctly at an approved location when not in use.

<b>Learning outcome</b>
The learner will: 3. Know the systems and procedures for maintaining health, safety and security
<b>Assessment criteria</b>
The learner can: 3.1 State the organisational requirements with regard to ensuring the security of the workplace 3.2 Describe the roles and responsibilities for health and safety in the workplace under organisational policy and legislation 3.3 State why inadequate measures to control risks should be reported. 3.4 Describe procedures for different types of emergencies appropriate to the relevant industry 3.5 Explain how the procedures for specific emergencies may be affected by location 3.6 Identify different types of fire extinguishers and their use, relevant to the work area 3.7 Describe the different forms of waste and appropriate methods of disposal 3.8 Explain the relationship between security and safety within the workplace 3.9 List any specific risks relevant to child safety in the workplace 3.10 State how and why accidents should be reported.

<b>Learning outcome</b>
The learner will: 4. Understand why equipment is transported and stored safely
<b>Assessment criteria</b>
The learner can: 4.1 Explain how to transport and store equipment and materials safely.



<b>Learning outcome</b>
The learner will: 5. Know the reason for following manufacturers' guidance
<b>Assessment criteria</b>
The learner can: 5.1 State the importance of following manufacturers' and organisational instructions and the potential consequences and risks of not doing so.

<b>Learning outcome</b>
The learner will: 6. Maintain good standards of health and safety for self and for others
<b>Assessment criteria</b>
The learner can: 6.1 Supply the necessary personal medical information in accordance with organisational requirements 6.2 Use and care for the correct personal protective equipment and clothing necessary for work 6.3 Use approved methods of handling when moving and lifting items 6.4 Use the appropriate personal and workplace hygiene at all times 6.5 Provide accurate information about location so that contact can be made if necessary 6.6 Work in a way which minimises risk to self, others and the environment 6.7 Take appropriate action where incidents affect the health and safety of workers 6.8 Report incidents without delay and complete records accurately, legibly and completely.

<b>Learning outcome</b>
The learner will: 7. Understand how to maintain the health and safety of self and others
<b>Assessment criteria</b>
The learner can: 7.1 Explain the roles in maintaining health and safety 7.2 Explain the reasons for leaving information about location when working in isolation or in remote locations 7.3 Explain why accidents should be reported without delay and recorded in the appropriate document

7.4 Explain the methods of minimising environmental damage during work.

**Learning outcome**

The learner will:

8. Know the safe lifting techniques

**Assessment criteria**

The learner can:

8.1 Describe the safe methods for moving and lifting items.

**Learning outcome**

The learner will:

9. Know how to maintain health and safety

**Assessment criteria**

The learner can:

9.1 Describe the reasons for maintaining good personal and workplace hygiene

9.2 State own ability to deal with health and safety emergencies (eg not carrying out actions beyond capabilities)

9.3 Describe how to administer basic emergency first aid procedures

9.4 Identify the types of personal protective equipment and clothing needed for work and how they must be used, cleaned, stored, inspected and replaced.

## **Unit 456            Monitoring and maintaining health and safety**

### Supporting information

#### **Guidance**

Simulation will not be acceptable where the unit is included in qualifications which verify competent performance. Please refer to Lantra's Assessment Strategy for further guidance.

<b>UAN:</b>	Y/502/3965
<b>Level:</b>	Level 2
<b>Credit value:</b>	6
<b>GLH:</b>	45
<b>Relationship to NOS:</b>	This unit is linked to Environmental Conservation NOS
<b>Endorsement by a sector or regulatory body:</b>	This unit is endorsed by Lantra, the Sector Skills Council for Land and Environment

<b>Learning outcome</b>
The learner will:
1. Be able to determine the need for vertebrate pests and predator control
<b>Assessment criteria</b>
The learner can:
1.1 Interpret signs to determine vertebrate pest and predator activity
1.2 Modify monitoring activities to take account of seasonal variations, prevailing weather conditions and habitat
1.3 Develop a trapping regime to control vertebrate pests and predators population.

<b>Learning outcome</b>
The learner will:
2. Be able to trap vertebrate pests and predators
<b>Assessment criteria</b>
The learner can:
2.1 Select a trapping method appropriate to the vertebrate pests and predators species
2.2 Ensure the good working order of selected traps
2.3 Establish traps in suitable locations to effectively catch target vertebrate pests and predators species and to minimise impact on non-target species
2.4 Monitor and maintain traps according to legal requirements
2.5 Approach trapped vertebrate pests and predators in a manner which maintains personal safety
2.6 Despatch trapped vertebrate pests and predators humanely

- |   |
|---|
| 2.7 Release non-target species back into the wild in a manner which promotes their health and well-being and is consistent with legal requirements. |
|---|

<b>Learning outcome</b>
-------------------------

The learner will:
-------------------

- |   |
|---|
| 3. Be able to work safely and minimise environmental damage |
|---|

<b>Assessment criteria</b>
----------------------------

The learner can:
------------------

- |  |
|--|
| 3.1 Work in a way which maintains health and safety and is consistent with relevant legislation, codes of practice and any additional requirements |
| 3.2 Carry out work in a manner which minimises environmental damage  |
| 3.3 Dispose of waste and mortalities responsibly according to legal requirements.  |

<b>Learning outcome</b>
-------------------------

The learner will:
-------------------

- |   |
|---|
| 4. Be able to maintain accurate records |
|---|

<b>Assessment criteria</b>
----------------------------

The learner can:
------------------

- |   |
|---|
| 4.1 Maintain accurate trapping records. |
|---|

<b>Learning outcome</b>
-------------------------

The learner will:
-------------------

- |   |
|---|
| 5. Know how to determine the need for vertebrate pests and predator control |
|---|

<b>Assessment criteria</b>
----------------------------

The learner can:
------------------

- |  |
|--|
| 5.1 Identify common mammal and bird pests and predators species  |
| 5.2 Describe the significance and potential effects of vertebrate pests and predators  |
| 5.3 Describe the behavioural characteristics of vertebrate pests and predators and how these can influence the control method selected                       |
| 5.4 Describe the effects of the seasons and weather conditions on monitoring activities  |
| 5.5 Describe the effects of vertebrate pests and predators on animal/plant populations   |
| 5.6 Explain how to interpret the following signs to determine pest and predator activity: <ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• direct sightings</li></ul> |

- runs
  - footprints
  - damage to habitat
  - dead animals
  - kills
  - sounds
  - smells
  - droppings
- 5.7 Describe the non-target species in the trapping area and how to recognise their presence
- 5.8 Explain the detail of a trapping regime including:
- the number of traps to be used
  - the type of traps to be used
  - the general location for the traps.

<b>Learning outcome</b>
The learner will:
6. Know how to trap vertebrate pests and predators
<b>Assessment criteria</b>
The learner can:
6.1 Outline the legal requirements and codes of practice controlling the use of traps and snares
6.2 Identify non-target species
6.3 Explain how to limit the impact of trapping on non-target species
6.4 Explain trapping methods and their correct implementation including positioning
6.5 Describe how the following trap types function:
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• spring traps</li> <li>• cage traps</li> <li>• snares</li> </ul>
6.6 Explain why trapping methods need to be appropriate to the vertebrate pests, the characteristics of the site and location
6.7 Outline the legal requirements controlling the use of traps and snares
6.8 Describe the behavioural characteristics of vertebrate pests and predators and how these can assist the trapping process
6.9 Explain how to humanely despatch different vertebrate pests and predators species
6.10 Describe how to dispose of despatched vertebrate pests and predators safely
6.11 Explain the methods used to release different non-target species safely in a way which promotes their health and well-being
6.12 Explain how to identify suitability of chosen trap
6.13 Explain how to maintain the condition of the live decoy, where appropriate

6.14 Explain how to check and maintain the function of traps and snares.

**Learning outcome**

The learner will:

7. Know relevant health and safety legislation and environmental good practice

**Assessment criteria**

The learner can:

- 7.1 Outline the current health and safety legislation, codes of practice and any additional requirements associated with trapping activities
- 7.2 Outline the individual's specific responsibilities under environmental and conservation legislation in relation to monitoring and controlling pests and predators
- 7.3 Explain how to minimise the dangers of disease or personal injury caused by handling trapped animals
- 7.4 Describe how to safely dispose of vertebrate pests and predators according to legal requirements.

**Learning outcome**

The learner will:

8. Know how to maintain accurate records

**Assessment criteria**

The learner can:

- 8.1 Explain the reason for keeping accurate, up to date vertebrate pest and predator records.

## **Unit 457                      Control vertebrate pests and predators using traps**

### **Supporting information**

#### **Guidance**

Simulation will not be acceptable where the unit is included in qualifications which verify competent performance. Please refer to Lantra's Assessment Strategy for further guidance.



## Unit 458

## Produce wood fuel in a woodland or forest

<b>UAN:</b>	Y/504/3665
<b>Level:</b>	Level 2
<b>Credit value:</b>	3
<b>GLH:</b>	23
<b>Relationship to NOS:</b>	This unit is linked to Trees and Timber NOS
<b>Endorsement by a sector or regulatory body:</b>	This unit is endorsed by Lantra, the Sector Skills Council for Land and Environment
<b>Aim:</b>	The aim and purpose of this unit is to provide the learner with the knowledge and skills required to produce wood fuel in a woodland or forest area

<b>Learning outcome</b>
The learner will: 1. Be able to work safely
<b>Assessment criteria</b>
The learner can: 1.1 Identify the <b>hazards and risks</b> associated with the working area and the proposed work 1.2 Use appropriate tools, equipment and personal protective equipment (PPE) 1.3 Carry out work in accordance with relevant legislation, industry good practice and maintains health and safety 1.4 Carry out work to minimise environmental damage 1.5 Dispose of waste in line with legislation and industry good practice.

<b>Range</b>
<b>Hazards and risks</b> Complete an appropriate risk assessment

<b>Learning outcome</b>
The learner will: 2. Be able to produce wood fuel from a woodland or forest
<b>Assessment criteria</b>
The learner can: 2.1 Identify suitable wood fuels to meet specifications 2.2 <b>Cut wood</b> to specification 2.3 Prepare wood to specification 2.4 Stack wood fuel safely for seasoning 2.5 Store wood fuel for seasoning appropriate to the production method 2.6 <b>Prepare wood fuel products</b> to meet market requirements.

<b>Range</b>
<b>Cut wood</b> Including processing
<b>Prepare wood fuel products</b> Wood fuel products: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• kindling</li> <li>• split logs</li> <li>• wood chip</li> <li>• faggots.</li> </ul>

<b>Learning outcome</b>
The learner will: 3. Know relevant health and safety legislation and industry good practice
<b>Assessment criteria</b>
The learner can: 3.1 Outline the current health and safety legislation, industry good practice and any additional requirements 3.2 Describe how to use and maintain tools, equipment and personal protective equipment (PPE) 3.3 Describe how environmental damage can be minimised 3.4 Describe the correct methods for disposing of waste.

<b>Learning outcome</b>
The learner will: 4. Know how to produce wood fuel in a woodland or forest
<b>Assessment criteria</b>
The learner can: 4.1 Describe different wood fuel markets and products 4.2 Explain the burning and processing qualities of different tree species 4.3 Outline storage methods appropriate for different wood fuel products 4.4 Explain how seasonality can affect the moisture content of different species and the production of wood fuel 4.5 State how storage can affect moisture content 4.6 State the significance of moisture content on the quality of the product 4.7 Explain the wood burning process and devices for heat generation 4.8 Outline the effect raw material will have on particle size and ash content 4.9 Explain relevance of seasoning timber and the level required for different fuel wood products.

## **Unit 458            Produce wood fuel in a                                  woodland or forest**

### **Supporting information**

#### **Guidance**

Simulation will not be acceptable where the unit is included in qualifications which verify competent performance. Please refer to Lantra's Assessment Strategy for further guidance.

## Unit 459

## Prepare and operate machinery to fell trees

<b>UAN:</b>	Y/504/3679
<b>Level:</b>	Level 2
<b>Credit value:</b>	5
<b>GLH:</b>	38
<b>Relationship to NOS:</b>	This unit is linked to Trees and Timber NOS
<b>Endorsement by a sector or regulatory body:</b>	This unit is endorsed by Lantra, the Sector Skills Council for Land and Environment
<b>Aim:</b>	The aim of this unit is to provide the learner with the knowledge and skills required to prepare, manoeuvre and operate machinery to fell trees in a range of woodland and forestry situations.

<b>Learning outcome</b>
The learner will: 1. Be able to work safely
<b>Assessment criteria</b>
The learner can: 1.1 Identify the <b>hazards and risks</b> associated with the working area and the proposed work 1.2 Use appropriate <b>tools, equipment and Personal Protective Equipment</b> 1.3 Carry out work specification in accordance with relevant legislation, industry good practice and maintains health and safety 1.4 Carry out work to minimise environmental damage.

<b>Range</b>
<b>Hazards and risks</b> Carry out a site risk assessment Identify route Assess the Operational and environmental requirements for the site Plan safe and efficient felling
<b>Tools, equipment and Personal Protective Equipment</b>

Store machinery, fuels and equipment securely on site.

**Learning outcome**

The learner will:

2. Be able to select and prepare machinery

**Assessment criteria**

The learner can:

- 2.1 Carry out **pre and post-start checks** to test all operating functions of the equipment
- 2.2 Plan **work and the work site** to maintain safe working areas to operate the timber processor.

**Range**

**Pre and post-start checks**

Including pre start visual checks to base machine

Safety devices, prior to harvesting timber, including fire control equipment

**Work and the work site**

With minimal damage to the worksite, standing trees, tracks, roads, drains and the wider environment in accordance with the site and job specification.

Utilise additional safeguards such as barriers, banksman and/or additional signs when operating machine and comply with safety distances from e.g. adjacent roads and tracks or where others are working.

**Learning outcome**

The learner will:

3. Be able to drive and manoeuvre machinery

**Assessment criteria**

The learner can:

- 3.1 Drive the machine on site and in a **safe and effective way**
- 3.2 Manoeuvre the machine on site and in a safe and effective way.

**Range**

**Safe and effective way**

Create and maintain brush mats with small trees, tops etc. to reduce ground damage and aid flotation to both tree felling and subsequent operations.

<b>Learning outcome</b>
The learner will: 4. Be able to fell trees
<b>Assessment criteria</b>
The learner can: 4.1 Identify trees in accordance with the job specification 4.2 <b>Fell trees</b> in accordance with the job specification 4.3 <b>Use machinery</b> in accordance with relevant legislation and manufacturer's instructions.

<b>Range</b>
<b>Fell trees</b> Safely and effectively Ensure that any damage to the remaining standing trees or to the environment is minimal and within specified limits
<b>Use machinery</b> Maintain machinery in accordance with relevant legislation and manufacturer's instructions  Store machinery securely on site

<b>Learning outcome</b>
The learner will: 5. Know how to prepare, drive and manoeuvre machinery
<b>Assessment criteria</b>
The learner can: 5.1 State the <b>safety requirements, routine and functional checks</b> required for machine and operator protection 5.2 Describe <b>safe driving techniques</b> that should be used on site 5.3 Explain the <b>implications</b> of terrain, ground conditions, season, weather and tree condition on planning access routes and driving the machine.

<b>Range</b>
--------------

**Safety requirements, routine and functional checks**

Such as OPS, ROPS and FOPS and other safety devices

The need for carrying out routine operator checks and basic maintenance

Identify the function of all operating controls for drive unit and harvesting equipment

Describe how to identify damaged and wear to harvesting head blades/knives

Planning and setting up re-fuelling areas.

**Safe driving techniques**

To reduce damage to the ground, any remaining standing trees or the wider environment to within specified limits

**Implications**

Describe how to use recovery and de-bogging techniques in a variety of situations.

**Learning outcome**

The learner will:

6. Know how to fell trees

**Assessment criteria**

The learner can:

- 6.1 Describe how to recognise trees to be felled to meet the job specification
- 6.2 Describe how to **assess trees** to determine felling method
- 6.3 Explain how to **carry out windblow clearance** and other difficult and dangerous operations.

**Range****Assess trees**

Single/ double cuts

Stump height buttressing

Capacity of head

**Carry out windblow clearance**

Including felling hung-up trees and dealing with shattered butts diseased, rotten dead or other malformed trees safely, as appropriate including oversized, buried or inaccessible butts.

**Learning outcome**

The learner will:

7. Know relevant health and safety legislation and industry good practice



### Assessment criteria

The learner can:

- 7.1 Outline current **health and safety legislation, codes of practice and any additional requirements**
- 7.2 Explain why it is **important to maintain good communication and team work** within the working environment
- 7.3 Describe the types of **records** that may be required for management and legislative requirements.

### Range

#### **Health and safety legislation, codes of practice and any additional requirements**

Discuss current guidelines on machinery operation, risk zones and safety clearance from overhead cables and what to do in the event of contact with power lines

Prepare for crossing water courses

Describe the implication of working at height in relation to operator checks and maintenance

Describe causes of, and how to prevent potential pollution and environmental damage when preparing and using loader - fed processor

Describe how to minimise any pollution incident including the pollution control equipment that should be available on site and to whom any incidents should be reported

#### **important to maintain good communication and team work**

Team include: chainsaw operators

Timber haulier

Colleagues on site

#### **Records**

LOLER

PUWER and the importance of accurate record keeping

## **Unit 459            Prepare and operate machinery to fell trees**

### Supporting information

#### **Guidance**

Simulation will not be acceptable where the unit is included in qualifications which verify competent performance. Please refer to Lantra's Assessment Strategy for further guidance.

<b>UAN:</b>	Y/600/0826
<b>Level:</b>	Level 2
<b>Credit value:</b>	4
<b>GLH:</b>	30
<b>Relationship to NOS:</b>	This unit is linked to Environmental Conservation
<b>Endorsement by a sector or regulatory body:</b>	This unit is endorsed by Lantra, the Sector Skills Council for Land and Environment

<b>Learning outcome</b>
The learner will:
1. Construct, maintain and repair stiles
<b>Assessment criteria</b>
The learner can:
1.1 Prepare the site appropriately, and in a way which minimises the effect on the surrounding environment
1.2 Construct, maintain or repair the stile to specification, and finish it in a way which fits in with the surrounding environment
1.3 Take appropriate action without delay where problems occur during work including:
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• accidental damage</li> <li>• difficulties in meeting the specification disturbance to wildlife or environment</li> </ul>
1.4 Identify and report potential improvements to the work specification
1.5 Make the site good when work is finished, and dispose of any waste or unwanted materials correctly and safely.

<b>Learning outcome</b>
The learner will:
2. Be able to select, use and maintain equipment for the construction, maintenance and repair of stiles
<b>Assessment criteria</b>
The learner can:
2.1 Select appropriate equipment and materials for this area of work

- |  |
|--|
| <p>2.2 Use equipment according to instructions</p> <p>2.3 Prepare, maintain and store equipment in a safe and effective working condition.</p> |
|--|

<b>Learning outcome</b>
-------------------------

The learner will:
-------------------

- |   |
|---|
| 3. Be able to work safely and minimise environmental damage |
|---|

<b>Assessment criteria</b>
----------------------------

The learner can:
------------------

- |   |
|---|
| 3.1 Work in a way which maintains health and safety and is consistent with current legislation, codes of practice and any additional requirements |
| 3.2 Carry out work in a manner which minimises environmental damage   |
| 3.3 Dispose of waste safely and correctly.  |

<b>Learning outcome</b>
-------------------------

The learner will:
-------------------

- |  |
|--|
| 4. Know how to construct, maintain and repair stiles |
|--|

<b>Assessment criteria</b>
----------------------------

The learner can:
------------------

- |   |
|---|
| 4.1 Describe suitable methods for preparing the site  |
| 4.2 Explain the proposed use of the stile and how this relates to the specification and operations  |
| 4.3 Outline how to interpret and use relevant specifications covering: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• setting out and location</li> <li>• materials and resources</li> <li>• timing and timescales</li> <li>• working methods</li> <li>• suitability to expected use and local tradition</li> </ul> |
| 4.4 Outline the context within which the stile is set, and how this relates to the specification  |
| 4.5 Explain the methods for constructing, maintaining and repairing stiles  |
| 4.6 Describe the problems which may occur during operations and how these should be dealt with covering: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• accidental damage</li> <li>• difficulties in meeting the specification disturbance to wildlife or environment</li> </ul>                                    |
| 4.7 Describe the environmental value of work sites, the potential effects of work on the environment and how to control these   |
| 4.8 Describe the required condition of the site on completion of operations.  |

<b>Learning outcome</b>
The learner will: 5. Know the current health and safety legislation and environmental good practice
<b>Assessment criteria</b>
The learner can: 5.1 Outline the current health and safety legislation, codes of practice and any additional requirements, which apply to this area of work. 5.2 Describe how environmental damage can be minimised 5.3 Describe the correct methods for disposing of waste. 5.4 Explain how to identify hazards and assess risks 5.5 Explain how to interpret risk assessments.

## **Unit 460            Construct, maintain and repair                                  stiles**

### Supporting information

#### **Guidance**

Simulation will not be acceptable where the unit is included in qualifications which verify competent performance. Please refer to Lantra's Assessment Strategy for further guidance.

## Unit 461

# Carry out non chemical post-planting protection and maintenance

<b>UAN:</b>	Y/601/0255
<b>Level:</b>	Level 2
<b>Credit value:</b>	2
<b>GLH:</b>	15
<b>Relationship to NOS:</b>	This unit is linked to Horticulture NOS
<b>Endorsement by a sector or regulatory body:</b>	This unit is endorsed by Lantra, the Sector Skills Council for Land and Environment

<b>Learning outcome</b>
The learner will: 1. Be able to carry out non chemical post planting protection
<b>Assessment criteria</b>
The learner can: 1.1 Check all materials are those specified in the job specification and in a suitable condition 1.2 Transport and store materials in a manner which minimises damage and ensures safety and security 1.3 Carry out protection and maintenance in line with the job specification avoiding damage to the planted trees and to the environment.

<b>Learning outcome</b>
The learner will: 2. Be able to work safely and minimise environmental damage
<b>Assessment criteria</b>
The learner can: 2.1 Work in a way which maintains health and safety and is consistent with relevant legislation, codes of practice and any additional requirements 2.2 Dispose of surplus was and/or waste safely and correctly.

<b>Learning outcome</b>
The learner will: 3. Be able to select, use and maintain relevant equipment
<b>Assessment criteria</b>
The learner can: 3.1 Select and use appropriate equipment for this area of work 3.2 Prepare, maintain and store equipment in a safe and effective working condition.

<b>Learning outcome</b>
The learner will: 4. Know how to carry out non chemical plant protection
<b>Assessment criteria</b>
The learner can: 4.1 Describe how to safely and securely transport and store materials 4.2 State how to report any defects or deficiencies in materials and to whom 4.3 Describe the range of protection and maintenance methods and how they are used 4.4 Describe the range of damage that can be caused along with the damaging agents and how to protect against them.

<b>Learning outcome</b>
The learner will: 5. Know relevant health and safety legislation and environmental good practice
<b>Assessment criteria</b>
The learner can: 5.1 Outline the current health and safety legislation, codes of practice and any additional requirements 5.2 Describe how environmental damage can be minimised 5.3 Describe the correct methods for disposing of surplus materials and/or waste.

<b>Learning outcome</b>
The learner will: 6. Know the types of equipment required and how to maintain them
<b>Assessment criteria</b>
The learner can:



6.1 Describe the equipment which will be required for the activity and the methods of maintaining the range of equipment.

**Unit 461**                      **Carry out non chemical post-planting protection and maintenance**

Supporting information

**Guidance**

Simulation will not be acceptable where the unit is included in qualifications which verify competent performance. Please refer to Lantra's Assessment Strategy for further guidance.

<b>UAN:</b>	Y/601/0269
<b>Level:</b>	Level 2
<b>Credit value:</b>	2
<b>GLH:</b>	15
<b>Relationship to NOS:</b>	This unit is linked to Trees and Timber NOS
<b>Endorsement by a sector or regulatory body:</b>	This unit is endorsed by Lantra, the Sector Skills Council for Land and Environment

<b>Learning outcome</b>
The learner will:
1. Know the principles of forest and moorland fire fighting
<b>Assessment criteria</b>
The learner can:
1.1 Describe the personal protective equipment required for wildfire suppression operators
1.2 Summarise the forest or estate fire plan, fire maps, symbols and other company working practices and industry good practice
1.3 Describe the role of the emergency services and chain of command
1.4 Describe the elements that are required for fire to exist
1.5 Describe the phases of combustion (pre-heating, gas combustion and charcoal combustion)
1.6 Outline how weather, topography and fuels affect fire behaviour, including rate of spread and fire intensity
1.7 Describe fuel types and loads and the characteristics of grass, heather, forests and peat fires
1.8 Describe the potential impact of wildfires and fire suppression activities on the environment
1.9 Describe the purpose and value of firebreaks
1.10 Describe when it is appropriate to extinguish fires and the suitable tactics, tools and equipment to use.

<b>Learning outcome</b>
The learner will: 2. Know how to support forest and moorland fire fighting
<b>Assessment criteria</b>
The learner can: 2.1 Outline how to assess and report on key fire information 2.2 Summarise the three main fire suppression strategies: direct, indirect and flanking attack 2.3 Describe the phases of fire suppression operations covering: knockdown, containment, mop up and patrol.

<b>Learning outcome</b>
The learner will: 3. Know relevant health and safety legislation and environmental good practice
<b>Assessment criteria</b>
The learner can: 3.1 Outline the current health and safety legislation, codes of practice and any additional requirements.

## **Unit 462 Principles of forest and moorland fire fighting**

### **Supporting information**

#### **Guidance**

Simulation will not be acceptable where the unit is included in qualifications which verify competent performance. Please refer to Lantra's Assessment Strategy for further guidance.

<b>UAN:</b>	<b>A/600/0818</b>
<b>Level:</b>	Level 2
<b>Credit value:</b>	4
<b>GLH:</b>	30
<b>Relationship to NOS:</b>	This unit is linked to Environmental Conservation NOS
<b>Endorsement by a sector or regulatory body:</b>	This unit is endorsed by Lantra, the Sector Skills Council for Land and Environment

<b>Learning outcome</b>
The learner will:
1. Construct, maintain and repair post and wire fence boundaries
<b>Assessment criteria</b>
The learner can:
1.1 Prepare the site appropriately, and in a way which minimises the effect on the surrounding environment
1.2 Identify the proposed line for the boundary from the specification and any special considerations which relate to the line including: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• health and safety</li> <li>• environmental impact</li> <li>• access</li> </ul>
1.3 Construct, maintain or repair the boundaries to specification, and finish it in a way which fits in with the surrounding environment
1.4 Take appropriate action without delay where problems occur during work including: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• accidental damage</li> <li>• difficulties in meeting the specification disturbance to wildlife or environment</li> </ul>
1.5 Handle, manoeuvre and transport materials safely
1.6 Identify and report potential improvements to the work specification
1.7 Make the site good when work is finished, and dispose of any waste or unwanted materials correctly and safely.

<b>Learning outcome</b>
The learner will: 2. Be able to select, use and maintain equipment for the construction, maintenance and repair of post and wire fence boundaries
<b>Assessment criteria</b>
The learner can: 2.1 Select appropriate equipment and materials for this area of work 2.2 Use equipment according to instructions 2.3 Prepare, maintain and store equipment in a safe and effective working condition.

<b>Learning outcome</b>
The learner will: 3. Be able to work safely and minimise environmental damage
<b>Assessment criteria</b>
The learner can: 3.1 Work in a way which maintains health and safety and is consistent with current legislation, codes of practice and any additional requirements 3.2 Carry out work in a manner which minimises environmental damage 3.3 Dispose of waste safely and correctly.

<b>Learning outcome</b>
The learner will: 4. Know how to construct, maintain and repair post and wire fence boundaries
<b>Assessment criteria</b>
The learner can: 4.1 Describe suitable methods for preparing the site 4.2 Outline how to interpret and use relevant specifications covering: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• setting out and location</li> <li>• materials and resources</li> <li>• timing and timescales</li> <li>• working methods</li> <li>• suitability to expected use and local tradition</li> </ul> 4.3 Outline the context within which the boundary is set, and how this relates to the specification 4.4 Describe the problems which may occur during operations and how these should be dealt with covering: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• accidental damage</li> <li>• difficulties in meeting the specification disturbance to wildlife or environment</li> </ul> 4.5 Describe the environmental value of work sites, the potential effects of work on the environment and how to control these

- |     |  |
|-----|--|
| 4.6 | Describe the reasons for leaving the site in the required condition on completion of operations  |
| 4.7 | Describe the reasons for leaving the site in the required condition on completion of operations. |

<b>Learning outcome</b>
-------------------------

The learner will:
-------------------

- |   |
|---|
| 5. Know the current health and safety legislation and environmental good practice |
|---|

<b>Assessment criteria</b>
----------------------------

The learner can:
------------------

- |     |  |
|-----|--|
| 5.1 | Outline the current health and safety legislation, codes of practice and any additional requirements, which apply to this area of work |
| 5.2 | Describe how environmental damage can be minimised   |
| 5.3 | Describe the correct methods for disposing of waste  |
| 5.4 | Explain how to identify hazards and assess risks   |
| 5.5 | Explain how to interpret risk assessments.   |

<b>Learning outcome</b>
-------------------------

The learner will:
-------------------

- |  |
|--|
| 6. Know the types of equipment required and how to maintain them |
|--|

<b>Assessment criteria</b>
----------------------------

The learner can:
------------------

- |     |   |
|-----|---|
| 6.1 | Describe the equipment which will be necessary for the construction, maintenance and repair of post and wire fence boundaries |
| 6.2 | Describe methods of maintaining the equipment in a fit state for use.   |



## **Unit 463                    Construct, maintain and repair post and wire fence boundaries**

### **Supporting information**

#### **Guidance**

Simulation will not be acceptable where the unit is included in qualifications which verify competent performance. Please refer to Lantra's Assessment Strategy for further guidance.

<b>UAN:</b>	<b>T/600/0817</b>
<b>Level:</b>	Level 2
<b>Credit value:</b>	4
<b>GLH:</b>	30
<b>Relationship to NOS:</b>	This unit is linked to Environmental Conservation NOS
<b>Endorsement by a sector or regulatory body:</b>	This unit is endorsed by Lantra, the Sector Skills Council for Land and Environment

<b>Learning outcome</b>
The learner will:
1. Construct, maintain and repair post and rail boundaries
<b>Assessment criteria</b>
The learner can:
1.1 Prepare the site appropriately, and in a way which minimises the effect on the surrounding environment
1.2 Identify the proposed line for the boundary from the specification and any special considerations which relate to the line including: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• health and safety</li> <li>• environmental impact</li> <li>• access</li> </ul>
1.3 Construct, maintain or repair the boundaries to specification, and finish it in a way which fits in with the surrounding environment
1.4 Take appropriate action without delay where problems occur during work including: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• accidental damage</li> <li>• difficulties in meeting the specification disturbance to wildlife or environment</li> </ul>
1.5 Handle, manoeuvre and transport materials safely
1.6 Identify and report potential improvements to the work specification
1.7 Make the site good when work is finished, and dispose of any waste or unwanted materials correctly and safely.

<b>Learning outcome</b>
The learner will: 2. Be able to select, use and maintain equipment for the construction, maintenance and repair of post and rail fence boundaries
<b>Assessment criteria</b>
The learner can: 2.1 Select appropriate equipment and materials for this area of work 2.2 Use equipment according to instructions 2.3 Prepare, maintain and store equipment in a safe and effective working condition.

<b>Learning outcome</b>
The learner will: 3. Be able to work safely and minimise environmental damage
<b>Assessment criteria</b>
The learner can: 3.1 Work in a way which maintains health and safety and is consistent with current legislation, codes of practice and any additional requirements 3.2 Carry out work in a manner which minimises environmental damage 3.3 Dispose of waste safely and correctly.

<b>Learning outcome</b>
The learner will: 4. Know how to construct, maintain and repair post and rail fence boundaries
<b>Assessment criteria</b>
The learner can: 4.1 Describe suitable methods for preparing the site 4.2 Outline how to interpret and use relevant specifications covering: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• setting out and location</li> <li>• materials and resources</li> <li>• timing and timescales</li> <li>• working methods</li> <li>• suitability to expected use and local tradition</li> </ul> 4.3 Outline the context within which the boundary is set, and how this relates to the specification 4.4 Describe the problems which may occur during operations and how these should be dealt with covering: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• accidental damage</li> <li>• difficulties in meeting the specification disturbance to wildlife or environment</li> </ul>

- |     |   |
|-----|---|
| 4.5 | Describe the environmental value of work sites, the potential effects of work on the environment and how to control these |
| 4.6 | Describe the reasons for leaving the site in the required condition on completion of operations.                          |

<b>Learning outcome</b>
The learner will: 5. Know the current health and safety legislation and environmental good practice
<b>Assessment criteria</b>
The learner can: 5.1 Outline the current health and safety legislation, codes of practice and any additional requirements, which apply to this area of work. 5.2 Describe how environmental damage can be minimised 5.3 Describe the correct methods for disposing of waste. 5.4 Explain how to identify hazards and assess risks 5.5 Explain how to interpret risk assessments.

<b>Learning outcome</b>
The learner will: 6. Know the types of equipment required and how to maintain them
<b>Assessment criteria</b>
The learner can: 6.1 Describe the equipment which will be necessary for the construction, maintenance and repair of post and rail fence boundaries 6.2 Describe methods of maintaining the equipment in a fit state for use.

## **Unit 464            Construct, maintain and repair post and rail boundaries**

### **Supporting information**

#### **Guidance**

Simulation will not be acceptable where the unit is included in qualifications which verify competent performance. Please refer to Lantra's Assessment Strategy for further guidance.

<b>UAN:</b>	<b>K/600/0815</b>
<b>Level:</b>	Level 2
<b>Credit value:</b>	4
<b>GLH:</b>	30
<b>Relationship to NOS:</b>	This unit is linked to Environmental Conservation NOS
<b>Endorsement by a sector or regulatory body:</b>	This unit is endorsed by Lantra, the Sector Skills Council for Land and Environment

<b>Learning outcome</b>
The learner will:
1. Construct, maintain and repair banks
<b>Assessment criteria</b>
The learner can:
1.1 Prepare the site appropriately, and in a way which minimises the effect on the surrounding environment
1.2 Identify the proposed line for the boundary from the specification and any special considerations which relate to the line including: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• health and safety</li> <li>• environmental impact</li> <li>• access</li> </ul>
1.3 Construct, maintain or repair the boundaries to specification, and finish it in a way which fits in with the surrounding environment
1.4 Take appropriate action without delay where problems occur during work including: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• accidental damage</li> <li>• difficulties in meeting the specification disturbance to wildlife or environment</li> </ul>
1.5 Handle, manoeuvre and transport materials safely
1.6 Identify and report potential improvements to the work specification
1.7 Make the site good when work is finished, and dispose of any waste or unwanted materials correctly and safely.

<b>Learning outcome</b>
The learner will: 2. Be able to select, use and maintain equipment for the construction, maintenance and repair of banks
<b>Assessment criteria</b>
The learner can: 2.1 Select appropriate equipment and materials for this area of work 2.2 Use equipment according to instructions 2.3 Prepare, maintain and store equipment in a safe and effective working condition.

<b>Learning outcome</b>
The learner will: 3. Be able to work safely and minimise environmental damage
<b>Assessment criteria</b>
The learner can: 3.1 Work in a way which maintains health and safety and is consistent with current legislation, codes of practice and any additional requirements 3.2 Carry out work in a manner which minimises environmental damage 3.3 Dispose of waste safely and correctly.

<b>Learning outcome</b>
The learner will: 4. Know how to construct, maintain and repair banks
<b>Assessment criteria</b>
The learner can: 4.1 Describe suitable methods for preparing the site 4.2 Outline how to interpret and use relevant specifications covering: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• setting out and location</li> <li>• materials and resources</li> <li>• timing and timescales</li> <li>• working methods</li> <li>• suitability to expected use and local tradition</li> </ul> 4.3 Outline the context within which the boundary is set, and how this relates to the specification 4.4 Describe the problems which may occur during operations and how these should be dealt with covering: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• accidental damage</li> </ul>

	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• difficulties in meeting the specification disturbance to wildlife or environment</li> </ul>
4.5	Describe the environmental value of work sites, the potential effects of work on the environment and how to control these
4.6	Describe the reasons for leaving the site in the required condition on completion of operations.

<b>Learning outcome</b>	
The learner will:	
5.	Know the current health and safety legislation and environmental good practice
<b>Assessment criteria</b>	
The learner can:	
5.1	Outline the current health and safety legislation, codes of practice and any additional requirements, which apply to this area of work.
5.2	Describe how environmental damage can be minimised
5.3	Describe the correct methods for disposing of waste.
5.4	Explain how to identify hazards and assess risks
5.5	Explain how to interpret risk assessments.

<b>Learning outcome</b>	
The learner will:	
6.	Know the types of equipment required and how to maintain them
<b>Assessment criteria</b>	
The learner can:	
6.1	Describe the equipment which will be necessary for the construction, maintenance and repair of banks
6.2	Describe methods of maintaining the equipment in a fit state for use.



## **Unit 465            Construct, maintain and repair banks**

### Supporting information

#### **Guidance**

Simulation will not be acceptable where the unit is included in qualifications which verify competent performance. Please refer to Lantra's Assessment Strategy for further guidance.

<b>UAN:</b>	L/600/0824
<b>Level:</b>	Level 2
<b>Credit value:</b>	4
<b>GLH:</b>	30
<b>Relationship to NOS:</b>	This unit is linked to Environmental Conservation NOS
<b>Endorsement by a sector or regulatory body:</b>	This unit is endorsed by Lantra, the Sector Skills Council for Land and Environment

<b>Learning outcome</b>
The learner will:
1. Construct, maintain and repair access gates
<b>Assessment criteria</b>
The learner can:
1.1 Prepare the site appropriately, and in a way which minimises the effect on the surrounding environment
1.2 Construct, maintain or repair the access point to specification, and finish it in a way which fits in with the surrounding environment
1.3 Take appropriate action without delay where problems occur during work including:
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• accidental damage</li> <li>• difficulties in meeting the specification disturbance to wildlife or environment</li> </ul>
1.4 Identify and report potential improvements to the work specification
1.5 Make the site good when work is finished, and dispose of any waste or unwanted materials correctly and safely.

<b>Learning outcome</b>
The learner will:
2. Be able to select, use and maintain equipment for the construction, maintenance and repair of access gates
<b>Assessment criteria</b>
The learner can:
2.1 Select appropriate equipment and materials for this area of work

- |  |
|--|
| <p>2.2 Use equipment according to instructions</p> <p>2.3 Prepare, maintain and store equipment in a safe and effective working condition.</p> |
|--|

<b>Learning outcome</b>
-------------------------

The learner will:
-------------------

- |   |
|---|
| 3. Be able to work safely and minimise environmental damage |
|---|

<b>Assessment criteria</b>
----------------------------

The learner can:
------------------

- |   |
|---|
| 3.1 Work in a way which maintains health and safety and is consistent with current legislation, codes of practice and any additional requirements |
| 3.2 Carry out work in a manner which minimises environmental damage   |
| 3.3 Dispose of waste safely and correctly.  |

<b>Learning outcome</b>
-------------------------

The learner will:
-------------------

- |  |
|--|
| 4. Know how to construct, maintain and repair access gates |
|--|

<b>Assessment criteria</b>
----------------------------

The learner can:
------------------

- |   |
|---|
| 4.1 Describe suitable methods for preparing the site  |
| 4.2 Explain the proposed use of the access point and how this relates to the specification and operations   |
| 4.3 Outline how to interpret and use relevant specifications covering: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• setting out and location</li> <li>• materials and resources</li> <li>• timing and timescales</li> <li>• working methods</li> <li>• suitability to expected use and local tradition</li> </ul> |
| 4.4 Outline the context within which the access gate is set, and how this relates to the specification  |
| 4.5 Explain the methods for constructing, maintaining and repairing access gates  |
| 4.6 Describe the problems which may occur during operations and how these should be dealt with covering: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• accidental damage</li> <li>• difficulties in meeting the specification disturbance to wildlife or environment</li> </ul>                                    |
| 4.7 Describe the environmental value of work sites, the potential effects of work on the environment and how to control these   |
| 4.8 Describe the required condition of the site on completion of operations.  |

<b>Learning outcome</b>
The learner will: 5. Know the current health and safety legislation and environmental good practice
<b>Assessment criteria</b>
The learner can: 5.1 Outline the current health and safety legislation, codes of practice and any additional requirements, which apply to this area of work. 5.2 Describe how environmental damage can be minimised 5.3 Describe the correct methods for disposing of waste. 5.4 Explain how to identify hazards and assess risks 5.5 Explain how to interpret risk assessments.

<b>Learning outcome</b>
The learner will: 6. Know the types of equipment required and how to maintain them
<b>Assessment criteria</b>
The learner can: 6.1 Describe the equipment which will be necessary for the construction, maintenance and repair of access gates 6.2 Describe methods of maintaining the equipment in a fit state for use.

## **Unit 466            Construct, maintain and repair access gates**

### Supporting information

#### **Guidance**

Simulation will not be acceptable where the unit is included in qualifications which verify competent performance. Please refer to Lantra's Assessment Strategy for further guidance.

<b>UAN:</b>	<b>A/502/3215</b>
<b>Level:</b>	Level 2
<b>Credit value:</b>	4
<b>GLH:</b>	30
<b>Relationship to NOS:</b>	This unit is linked to Environmental Conservation NOS
<b>Endorsement by a sector or regulatory body:</b>	This unit is endorsed by Lantra, the Sector Skills Council for Land and Environment

<b>Learning outcome</b>
The learner will:
1. Be able to construct, maintain and repair reinforced paths
<b>Assessment criteria</b>
The learner can:
1.1 Identify the proposed line for the reinforced path and the special considerations
1.2 Take steps to ensure that other site users are not put at risk by work by: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• providing information (signs etc.)</li> <li>• re-routing access away from unsafe areas</li> <li>• speaking to others on site</li> </ul>
1.3 Provide drainage to specification to suit the site's needs and its expected levels of use
1.4 Construct, maintain or repair the reinforced path to specification, and finish it in a way which fits in with the surrounding environment to include: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• setting out and location</li> <li>• materials and resources</li> <li>• timing and timescales</li> <li>• working methods</li> <li>• suitability of expected use and local tradition</li> </ul>
1.5 Use appropriate methods to reduce the impact of erosion on areas around the path
1.6 Leave the site in a suitable condition when the work is finished.
1.7 Inform the appropriate person of any potential improvements to the work specification which are identified

- remedying the situation
- (ii) informing others who need to act.

**Learning outcome**

The learner will:

2. Be able to work safely and minimise environmental damage

**Assessment criteria**

The learner can:

- 2.1 Work in a way which maintains health and safety and is consistent with relevant legislation, codes of practice and any additional requirements
- 2.2 Carry out work in a manner which minimises environmental damage
- 2.3 Dispose of waste safely and correctly.

**Learning outcome**

The learner will:

3. Be able to select, use and maintain relevant equipment

**Assessment criteria**

The learner can:

- 3.1 Select appropriate equipment for this area of work
- 3.2 Use equipment according to relevant legislation and manufacturer's instructions
- 3.3 Prepare, maintain and store equipment in a safe and effective working condition.

**Learning outcome**

The learner will:

4. Know how to construct, maintain and repair reinforced paths

**Assessment criteria**

The learner can:

- 4.1 State how to identify hazards, assess risks and interpret risk assessments
- 4.2 State the importance of using appropriate materials to produce a path which is fit for use and fits into the surrounding environment
- 4.3 State the methods for preparing the site and how to create suitable foundations and drainage
- 4.4 Describe the purpose of the path and how this relates to the specification and operations
- 4.5 Describe how to interpret and use relevant specifications
- 4.6 Describe the methods for constructing, maintaining and repairing reinforced paths
- 4.7 Describe the special considerations which relate to the proposed line to include:
  - health and safety

<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• environmental impact</li> <li>• access</li> <li>• site use</li> <li>• site drainage and soils</li> <li>• site topography</li> </ul>
<p>4.8 State the problems which may occur during operations and how these should be dealt with</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• accidental damage</li> <li>• difficulties in meeting the specification</li> <li>• disturbance to wildlife or environment</li> </ul>
<p>4.9 Describe how the site should be left on completion of operations.</p>

<p><b>Learning outcome</b></p>
<p>The learner will:</p> <p>5. Know the difference between reinforced paths and other types of path</p>
<p><b>Assessment criteria</b></p>
<p>The learner can:</p> <p>5.1 State the defining characteristics of reinforced paths compared to the following:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• aggregate paths</li> <li>• flag paths</li> <li>• boardwalk paths</li> <li>• stone pitched paths</li> <li>• bark paths</li> </ul> <p>5.2 Identify typical uses of a reinforced path.</p>

<p><b>Learning outcome</b></p>
<p>The learner will:</p> <p>6. Know relevant health and safety legislation and environmental good practice</p>
<p><b>Assessment criteria</b></p>
<p>The learner can:</p> <p>6.1 Outline the current health and safety legislation, codes of practice and any additional requirements</p> <p>6.2 Describe how environmental damage can be minimised</p> <p>6.3 Describe the correct methods for disposing of waste.</p>

<p><b>Learning outcome</b></p>
<p>The learner will:</p> <p>7. Know the types of equipment required and how to maintain them</p>



<b>Assessment criteria</b>
The learner can: 7.1 Describe the equipment which will be required for the activity 7.2 Describe the methods of maintaining the range of equipment.

## **Unit 467          Construct, maintain and repair reinforced paths**

### Supporting information

#### **Guidance**

Simulation will not be acceptable where the unit is included in qualifications which verify competent performance. Please refer to Lantra's Assessment Strategy for further guidance.

<b>UAN:</b>	<b>T/502/3214</b>
<b>Level:</b>	Level 2
<b>Credit value:</b>	4
<b>GLH:</b>	30
<b>Relationship to NOS:</b>	This unit is linked to Environmental Conservation NOS
<b>Endorsement by a sector or regulatory body:</b>	This unit is endorsed by Lantra, the Sector Skills Council for Land and Environment

<b>Learning outcome</b>
The learner will:
1. Be able to construct, maintain and repair flag paths
<b>Assessment criteria</b>
The learner can:
1.1 Identify the proposed line for the flag path and any special considerations
1.2 Take steps to ensure that other site users are not put at risk by work including:
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• providing information (signs etc.)</li> <li>• re-routing access away from unsafe areas</li> <li>• speaking to others on site</li> </ul>
1.3 Provide drainage to specification to suit the site's needs and its expected levels of use
1.4 Construct, maintain or repair the flag path to specification, and finish it in a way which fits in with the surrounding environment to include:
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• setting out and location</li> <li>• materials and resources</li> <li>• timing and timescales</li> <li>• working methods</li> <li>• suitability of expected use and local tradition</li> </ul>
1.5 Use appropriate methods to reduce the impact of erosion on areas around the path
1.6 Leave the site in a suitable condition when the work is finished.
1.7 Inform the appropriate person of any potential improvements to the work specification which are identified

<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• remedying the situation</li> <li>• informing others who need to act.</li> </ul>
<b>Learning outcome</b>
The learner will:
2. Be able to work safely and minimise environmental damage
<b>Assessment criteria</b>
The learner can:
2.1 Work in a way which maintains health and safety and is consistent with relevant legislation, codes of practice and any additional requirements
2.2 Carry out work in a manner which minimises environmental damage
2.3 Dispose of waste safely and correctly.

<b>Learning outcome</b>
The learner will:
3. Be able to select, use and maintain relevant equipment
<b>Assessment criteria</b>
The learner can:
3.1 Select appropriate equipment for this area of work
3.2 Use equipment according to relevant legislation and manufacturer's instructions
3.3 Prepare, maintain and store equipment in a safe and effective working condition.

<b>Learning outcome</b>
The learner will:
4. Know how to construct, maintain and repair flag paths
<b>Assessment criteria</b>
The learner can:
4.1 State how to identify hazards, assess risks and interpret risk assessments
4.2 State the importance of using appropriate materials to produce a flag path which is fit for use and fits into the surrounding environment
4.3 State the suitable methods for preparing the site and how to create suitable foundations and drainage
4.4 Describe how to interpret and use relevant specifications
4.5 Describe the methods for constructing, maintaining and repairing flag paths and their usefulness for different path contexts
4.6 Describe all the special considerations which relate to the proposed line to include: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• health and safety</li> </ul>

- environmental impact
  - access
  - site use
  - site drainage and soils
  - site topography
- 4.7 State the problems which may occur during operations and how these should be dealt with
- accidental damage
  - difficulties in meeting the specification
  - disturbance to wildlife or environment
- 4.8 Describe how the site should be left on completion of operations
- 4.9 State the suitable methods for preparing the site and how to create suitable foundations and drainage
- 4.10 Describe how to interpret and use relevant specifications
- 4.11 Describe the methods for constructing, maintaining and repairing flag paths and their usefulness for different path contexts
- 4.12 Describe all the special considerations which relate to the proposed line to include:
- health and safety
  - environmental impact
  - access
  - site use
  - site drainage and soils
  - site topography
- 4.13 State the problems which may occur during operations and how these should be dealt with:
- accidental damage
  - difficulties in meeting the specification
  - disturbance to wildlife or environment
- 4.14 Describe how the site should be left on completion of operations
- 4.15 State the problems which may occur during operations and how these should be dealt with
- accidental damage
  - difficulties in meeting the specification
  - disturbance to wildlife or environment
- 4.16 Describe how the site should be left on completion of operations.

<b>Learning outcome</b>
The learner will: 5. Know the difference between flag paths and other types of path
<b>Assessment criteria</b>
The learner can: 5.1 State the defining characteristics of flag paths compared to the following: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• stone pitched paths</li> </ul>

- aggregate paths
- reinforced paths
- bark paths

5.2 Identify typical uses of a flag path.

<b>Learning outcome</b>
The learner will: 6. Know relevant health and safety legislation and environmental good practice
<b>Assessment criteria</b>
The learner can: 6.1 Outline the current health and safety legislation, codes of practice and any additional requirements 6.2 Describe how environmental damage can be minimised 6.3 Describe the correct methods for disposing of waste.

<b>Learning outcome</b>
The learner will: 7. Know the types of equipment required and how to maintain them
<b>Assessment criteria</b>
The learner can: 7.1 Describe the equipment which will be required for the activity 7.2 Describe the methods of maintaining the range of equipment.

## **Unit 468            Construct, maintain and repair flag paths**

### **Supporting information**

#### **Guidance**

Simulation will not be acceptable where the unit is included in qualifications which verify competent performance. Please refer to Lantra's Assessment Strategy for further guidance.

<b>UAN:</b>	<b>M/502/3213</b>
<b>Level:</b>	Level 2
<b>Credit value:</b>	4
<b>GLH:</b>	30
<b>Relationship to NOS:</b>	This unit is linked to Environmental Conservation NOS
<b>Endorsement by a sector or regulatory body:</b>	This unit is endorsed by Lantra, the Sector Skills Council for Land and Environment

<b>Learning outcome</b>
The learner will:
1. Be able to construct, maintain and repair boardwalks
<b>Assessment criteria</b>
The learner can:
1.1 Identify the proposed line for the boardwalk path and the special considerations
1.2 Take steps to ensure that other site users are not put at risk by work including:
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• providing information (signs etc.)</li> <li>• re-routing access away from unsafe areas</li> <li>• speaking to others on site</li> </ul>
1.3 Provide drainage to specification to suit the site's needs and its expected levels of use
1.4 Construct, maintain or repair the boardwalk to specification, and finish it in a way which fits in with the surrounding environment to include:
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• setting out and location</li> <li>• materials and resources</li> <li>• timing and timescales</li> <li>• working methods</li> <li>• suitability of expected use and local tradition</li> </ul>
1.5 Use appropriate methods to reduce the impact of erosion on areas around the path
1.6 Leave the site in a suitable condition when the work is finished.
1.7 Inform the appropriate person of any potential improvements to the work specification which are identified



<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• remedying the situation</li> <li>• informing others who need to act.</li> </ul>
<b>Learning outcome</b>
The learner will:
2. Be able to work safely and minimise environmental damage
<b>Assessment criteria</b>
The learner can:
2.1 Work in a way which maintains health and safety and is consistent with relevant legislation, codes of practice and any additional requirements
2.2 Carry out work in a manner which minimises environmental damage
2.3 Dispose of waste safely and correctly.

<b>Learning outcome</b>
The learner will:
3. Be able to select, use and maintain relevant equipment
<b>Assessment criteria</b>
The learner can:
3.1 Select appropriate equipment for this area of work
3.2 Use equipment according to relevant legislation and manufacturer's instructions
3.3 Prepare, maintain and store equipment in a safe and effective working condition.

<b>Learning outcome</b>
The learner will:
4. Know how to construct, maintain and repair boardwalks
<b>Assessment criteria</b>
The learner can:
4.1 State how to identify hazards, assess risks and interpret risk assessments
4.2 State the importance of using appropriate materials to produce a boardwalk which is fit for use and fits into the surrounding environment
4.3 Describe suitable methods for preparing the site and how to create suitable foundations and drainage
4.4 Describe how to interpret and use relevant specifications
4.5 Describe the methods for constructing, maintaining and repairing boardwalks and their usefulness for different path contexts
4.6 Describe all the special considerations which relate to the proposed line to include: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• health and safety</li> </ul>

	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• environmental impact</li> <li>• access</li> <li>• site use</li> <li>• site drainage and soils</li> <li>• site topography</li> </ul>
4.7	<p>State the problems which may occur during operations and how these should be dealt with</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• accidental damage</li> <li>• difficulties in meeting the specification</li> <li>• disturbance to wildlife or environment</li> </ul>
4.8	Describe how the site should be left on completion of operations.

<b>Learning outcome</b>	
The learner will:	
5.	Know the difference between boardwalk paths and other types of path
<b>Assessment criteria</b>	
The learner can:	
5.1	<p>State the defining characteristics of boardwalk paths compared to the following:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• stone pitched paths</li> <li>• flag paths</li> <li>• aggregate paths</li> <li>• reinforced paths</li> <li>• bark paths</li> </ul>
5.2	Identify a typical use of a boardwalk path.

<b>Learning outcome</b>	
The learner will:	
6.	Know relevant health and safety legislation and environmental good practice
<b>Assessment criteria</b>	
The learner can:	
6.1	Outline the current health and safety legislation, codes of practice and any additional requirements
6.2	Describe how environmental damage can be minimised
6.3	Describe the correct methods for disposing of waste.

<b>Learning outcome</b>	
The learner will:	
7.	Know the types of equipment required and how to maintain them

<b>Assessment criteria</b>
The learner can: 7.1 Describe the equipment which will be required for the activity 7.2 Describe the methods of maintaining the range of equipment.

## **Unit 469            Construct, maintain and repair boardwalks**

### Supporting information

#### **Guidance**

Simulation will not be acceptable where the unit is included in qualifications which verify competent performance. Please refer to Lantra's Assessment Strategy for further guidance.

<b>UAN:</b>	<b>K/502/3209</b>
<b>Level:</b>	Level 2
<b>Credit value:</b>	4
<b>GLH:</b>	30
<b>Relationship to NOS:</b>	This unit is linked to Environmental Conservation NOS
<b>Endorsement by a sector or regulatory body:</b>	This unit is endorsed by Lantra, the Sector Skills Council for Land and Environment

<b>Learning outcome</b>
The learner will:
1. Be able to construct, maintain and repair bark paths
<b>Assessment criteria</b>
The learner can:
1.1 Identify the proposed line for the bark path and the special considerations
1.2 Take steps to ensure that other site users are not put at risk by work by:
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• providing information (signs etc.)</li> <li>• re-routing access away from unsafe areas</li> <li>• speaking to others on site</li> </ul>
1.3 Provide drainage to specification to suit the site's needs and its expected levels of use
1.4 Construct, maintain or repair the bark path to specification, and finish it in a way which fits in with the surrounding environment to include:
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• setting out and location</li> <li>• materials and resources</li> <li>• timing and timescales</li> <li>• working methods</li> <li>• suitability of expected use and local tradition</li> </ul>
1.5 Use appropriate methods to reduce the impact of erosion on areas around the path
1.6 Leave the site in a suitable condition when the work is finished
1.7 Inform the appropriate person of any potential improvements to the work specification which are identified

- remedying the situation
- informing others who need to act.

**Learning outcome**

The learner will:

2. Be able to work safely and minimise environmental damage

**Assessment criteria**

The learner can:

- 2.1 Work in a way which maintains health and safety and is consistent with relevant legislation, codes of practice and any additional requirements
- 2.2 Carry out work in a manner which minimises environmental damage
- 2.3 Dispose of waste safely and correctly.

**Learning outcome**

The learner will:

3. Be able to select, use and maintain relevant equipment

**Assessment criteria**

The learner can:

- 3.1 Select appropriate equipment for this area of work
- 3.2 Use equipment according to relevant legislation and manufacturer's instructions
- 3.3 Prepare, maintain and store equipment in a safe and effective working condition.

**Learning outcome**

The learner will:

4. Know how to construct, maintain and repair bark paths

**Assessment criteria**

The learner can:

- 4.1 State how to identify hazards, assess risks and interpret risk assessments
- 4.2 State the importance of using appropriate materials to produce a path which is fit for use and fits into the surrounding environment
- 4.3 State the methods for preparing the site and how to create suitable foundations and drainage
- 4.4 Describe the purpose of the path and how this relates to the specification and operations
- 4.5 Describe how to interpret and use relevant specifications
- 4.6 Describe the methods for constructing, maintaining and repairing bark paths
- 4.7 Describe the special considerations which relate to the proposed line to include:
  - health and safety

<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• environmental impact</li> <li>• access</li> <li>• site use</li> <li>• site drainage and soils</li> <li>• site topography</li> </ul>
<p>4.8 State the problems which may occur during operations and how these should be dealt with</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• accidental damage</li> <li>• difficulties in meeting the specification</li> <li>• disturbance to wildlife or environment</li> </ul>
<p>4.9 Describe how the site should be left on completion of operations.</p>

<b>Learning outcome</b>
<p>The learner will:</p> <p>5. Know relevant health and safety legislation and environmental good practice</p>
<b>Assessment criteria</b>
<p>The learner can:</p> <p>5.1 Outline the current health and safety legislation, codes of practice and any additional requirements</p> <p>5.2 Describe how environmental damage can be minimised</p> <p>5.3 Describe the correct methods for disposing of waste.</p>

<b>Learning outcome</b>
<p>The learner will:</p> <p>6. Know the types of equipment required and how to maintain them</p>
<b>Assessment criteria</b>
<p>The learner can:</p> <p>6.1 Describe the equipment which will be required for the activity</p> <p>6.2 Describe the methods of maintaining the range of equipment.</p>

## **Unit 470                      Construct, maintain and repair bark paths**

### Supporting information

#### **Guidance**

Simulation will not be acceptable where the unit is included in qualifications which verify competent performance. Please refer to Lantra's Assessment Strategy for further guidance.



<b>UAN:</b>	<b>D/502/3207</b>
<b>Level:</b>	Level 2
<b>Credit value:</b>	4
<b>GLH:</b>	30
<b>Relationship to NOS:</b>	This unit is linked to Environmental Conservation NOS
<b>Endorsement by a sector or regulatory body:</b>	This unit is endorsed by Lantra, the Sector Skills Council for Land and Environment

<b>Learning outcome</b>
The learner will:
1. Be able to construct, maintain and repair aggregate paths
<b>Assessment criteria</b>
The learner can:
1.1 Identify the proposed line for the aggregate path
1.2 Take steps to ensure that other site users are not put at risk by work including:
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• providing information (signs etc.)</li> <li>• re-routing access away from unsafe areas</li> <li>• speaking to others on site</li> </ul>
1.3 Provide drainage to specification to suit the site's needs and its expected levels of use
1.4 Construct, maintain or repair the aggregate path to specification, and finish it in a way which fits in with the surrounding environment to include:
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• setting out and location</li> <li>• materials and resources</li> <li>• timing and timescales</li> <li>• working methods</li> <li>• suitability of expected use and local tradition</li> </ul>
1.5 Use appropriate methods to reduce the impact of erosion on areas around the path
1.6 Leave the site in a suitable condition when the work is finished.
1.7 Inform the appropriate person of any potential improvements to the work specification which are identified
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• remedying the situation</li> </ul>

- informing others who need to act.

**Learning outcome**

The learner will:

2. Be able to work safely and minimise environmental damage

**Assessment criteria**

The learner can:

- 2.1 Work in a way which maintains health and safety and is consistent with relevant legislation, codes of practice and any additional requirements
- 2.2 Carry out work in a manner which minimises environmental damage
- 2.3 Dispose of waste safely and correctly.

**Learning outcome**

The learner will:

3. Be able to select, use and maintain relevant equipment

**Assessment criteria**

The learner can:

- 3.1 Select appropriate equipment for this area of work
- 3.2 Use equipment according to relevant legislation and manufacturer's instructions
- 3.3 Prepare, maintain and store equipment in a safe and effective working condition.

**Learning outcome**

The learner will:

4. Know the different types of path

**Assessment criteria**

The learner can:

- 4.1 State the defining characteristics of an aggregate path compared to the following:
  - stone pitched paths
  - flag paths
  - boardwalks
  - reinforced paths
  - bark paths
- 4.2 State the typical use of an aggregate path.

<b>Learning outcome</b>
The learner will:
5. Know how to construct, maintain and repair paths
<b>Assessment criteria</b>
The learner can:
5.1 State how to identify hazards, assess risks and interpret risk assessments
5.2 State the importance of using appropriate materials to produce a path which is fit for use and fits into the surrounding environment
5.3 State the methods for preparing the site and how to create suitable foundations and drainage
5.4 State the purpose of the path and how this relates to the specification and operations
5.5 Describe how to interpret and use relevant specifications
5.6 Describe the methods for constructing, maintaining and repairing paths
5.7 Describe special considerations which relate to the line to include: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• health and safety</li> <li>• environmental impact</li> <li>• access</li> <li>• site use</li> <li>• site drainage and soils</li> <li>• site topography</li> </ul>
5.8 State the problems which may occur during operations and how these should be dealt with <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• accidental damage</li> <li>• difficulties in meeting the specification</li> <li>• disturbance to wildlife or environment</li> </ul>
5.9 Describe how the site should be left on completion of operations.

<b>Learning outcome</b>
The learner will:
6. Know relevant health and safety legislation and environmental good practice
<b>Assessment criteria</b>
The learner can:
6.1 Outline the current health and safety legislation, codes of practice and any additional requirements
6.2 Describe how environmental damage can be minimised
6.3 Describe the correct methods for disposing of waste.

<b>Learning outcome</b>
The learner will: 7. Know the types of equipment required and how to maintain them
<b>Assessment criteria</b>
The learner can: 7.1 Describe the equipment which will be required for the activity 7.2 Describe the methods of maintaining the range of equipment

## **Unit 471**                    **Construct, maintain and repair aggregate paths**

Supporting information

### **Guidance**

Simulation will not be acceptable where the unit is included in qualifications which verify competent performance. Please refer to Lantra's Assessment Strategy for further guidance.

<b>UAN:</b>	<b>K/601/0261</b>
<b>Level:</b>	Level 2
<b>Credit value:</b>	1
<b>GLH:</b>	8
<b>Relationship to NOS:</b>	This unit is linked to Environmental NOS
<b>Endorsement by a sector or regulatory body:</b>	This unit is endorsed by Lantra, the Sector Skills Council for Land and Environment

<b>Learning outcome</b>
The learner will:
1. Be able to dispose of stumps and roots
<b>Assessment criteria</b>
The learner can:
1.1 Establish the condition of the stumps
1.2 Locate and protect services and property
1.3 Use method of extraction/disposal appropriate to stump and root condition with regard to the landowner's requirements, the situation and industry guidelines
1.4 Restore the site to a condition that is acceptable to landowner and specification.

<b>Learning outcome</b>
The learner will:
2. Be able to work safely and minimise environmental damage
<b>Assessment criteria</b>
The learner can:
2.1 Work in a way which maintains health and safety and is consistent with relevant legislation, codes of practice and any additional requirements
2.2 Carry out work in a manner which minimises environmental damage
2.3 Dispose of residue/arising safely and correctly.

<b>Learning outcome</b>
The learner will: 3. Be able to select, prepare use and maintain equipment
<b>Assessment criteria</b>
The learner can: 3.1 Select and use appropriate equipment for this area of work 3.2 Check, prepare, maintain and store equipment in a safe and effective working condition.

<b>Learning outcome</b>
The learner will: 4. Know how to treat and dispose of stumps and roots
<b>Assessment criteria</b>
The learner can: 4.1 State how to identify, locate and protect services and why this is important 4.2 Outline the importance of restoring site to acceptable condition 4.3 Describe methods for stump and root extraction/ disposal and when these should be used 4.4 Describe how to establish the condition of stump.

<b>Learning outcome</b>
The learner will: 5. Know relevant health and safety legislation and environmental good practice
<b>Assessment criteria</b>
The learner can: 5.1 Outline the current health and safety legislation, codes of practice and any additional requirements 5.2 Describe how environmental damage can be minimised 5.3 Describe the correct methods for disposing of waste.

<b>Learning outcome</b>
The learner will: 6. Know the types of equipment required and how to maintain them
<b>Assessment criteria</b>
The learner can: 6.1 Describe the equipment and methods of maintaining the equipment which will be required for the activity.

## **Unit 472                  Dispose of stumps and roots**

### **Supporting information**

#### **Guidance**

Simulation will not be acceptable where the unit is included in qualifications which verify competent performance. Please refer to Lantra's Assessment Strategy for further guidance.



## Unit 507

## Construct a greenwood product to client specification

<b>UAN:</b>	<b>D/504/3666</b>
<b>Level:</b>	Level 3
<b>Credit value:</b>	8
<b>GLH:</b>	52
<b>Relationship to NOS:</b>	This unit is linked to Trees and Timber NOS
<b>Endorsement by a sector or regulatory body:</b>	This unit is endorsed by Lantra, the Sector Skills Council for Land and Environment.
<b>Aim:</b>	The aim and purpose of this unit is to provide the learner with the knowledge and skills required to construct a greenwood product to a client specification

<b>Learning outcome</b>
The learner will: 1. Be able to promote health and safety and industry good practice
<b>Assessment criteria</b>
The learner can: 1.1 Identify the <b>hazards and risks</b> associated with the working area and the proposed work 1.2 Carry out work in accordance with relevant legislation, industry best practice 1.3 Use <b>tools, equipment and personal protective equipment (PPE)</b> .

<b>Range</b>
<b>Hazards and risks</b> Complete an appropriate risk assessment
<b>Tools, equipment and personal protective equipment</b> Maintain tools, equipment and personal protective equipment (PPE).

<b>Learning outcome</b>
The learner will: 2. Be able to construct a greenwood product to client specification
<b>Assessment criteria</b>
The learner can: 2.1 Obtain an accurate specification of the greenwood product 2.2 Prepare a quotation for constructing the greenwood product 2.3 <b>Check materials</b> are suitable and appropriate to meet product specification 2.4 Construct a greenwood product to a design specification 2.5 Provide advice to minimise degradation of products in use, storage and transit.

<b>Range</b>
<b>Check materials</b> Using SMART Objectives
<b>Construct a greenwood product</b> Finish the greenwood product in a suitable way that will enhance and/or preserve it.

<b>Learning outcome</b>
The learner will: 3. Understand relevant health and safety legislation and industry good practice
<b>Assessment criteria</b>
The learner can: 3.1 Explain the importance of risk assessment 3.2 Summarise current health and safety legislation and industry good practice 3.3 Explain the importance of maintaining tools, equipment and personal protective equipment (PPE).

<b>Learning outcome</b>
The learner will: 4. Understand the principles of constructing greenwood products
<b>Assessment criteria</b>
The learner can: 4.1 Explain the <b>costing out of product</b> including time and costs 4.2 Explain commonly used methods for specifying greenwood products 4.3 Explain different <b>products</b> used to finish and preserve a completed greenwood product and their application 4.4 Compare different types of joints and their uses

4.5 Outline the need for product liability and when it is appropriate.

**Range**

**Costing out of product**

How to organise batch production

**Products**

Product life expectancy and maintenance

How to protect products against damage and degradation.

## **Unit 507                      Construct a greenwood product to client specification**

### **Supporting information**

#### **Guidance**

Simulation will not be acceptable where the unit is included in qualifications which verify competent performance. Please refer to Lantra's Assessment Strategy for further guidance.

<b>UAN:</b>	<b>F/504/0663</b>
<b>Level:</b>	Level 3
<b>Credit value:</b>	5
<b>GLH:</b>	33
<b>Relationship to NOS:</b>	This unit is linked to Trees and Timber NOS
<b>Endorsement by a sector or regulatory body:</b>	This unit is endorsed by Lantra, the Sector Skills Council for Land and Environment
<b>Aim:</b>	The aim and purpose of this unit is to provide the learner with the knowledge skills and understanding to prepare for and agree emergency treework operations

<b>Learning outcome</b>
The learner will:
1. Be able to promote health and safety and industry good practice
<b>Assessment criteria</b>
The learner can:
1.1 Identify the <b>hazards and risks</b> associated with the working area and the proposed work
1.2 Use appropriate tools, equipment and personal protective equipment (PPE)
1.3 Work in a way which promotes health and safety and is consistent with relevant legislation and industry good practice
1.4 Carry out work to minimise environmental damage
1.5 Dispose of waste in line with legislation.

<b>Range</b>
<b>Hazards and risks</b>
3 hazards and the associated risks with the working area.
3 hazards and the associated risks with the proposed work.

<b>Learning outcome</b>
The learner will: 2. Be able to prepare for and agree emergency treework operations
<b>Assessment criteria</b>
The learner can: 2.1 Prepare vehicle(s) and kit in anticipation of an emergency 2.2 Install suitable controls 2.3 Agree and establish an efficient and effective communication system with all the other services on site 2.4 Agree and establish an emergency plan and a method of work that is appropriate to the safety of those involved, the working area and the complexity of the situation 2.5 Check appropriate traffic management systems are in place to protect the workforce 2.6 Check that the emergency services have taken all necessary actions prior to undertaking treework operations 2.7 Match the skills and experience of personnel to the treework operations and the complexity of the situation.

<b>Learning outcome</b>
The learner will: 3. Understand relevant health and safety legislation and industry good practice
<b>Assessment criteria</b>
The learner can: 3.1 Explain the process of <b>risk assessment</b> 3.2 Outline the <b>emergency planning procedures</b> relevant to the work area 3.3 Summarise current <b>health and safety legislation and industry good practice</b> 3.4 Explain the <b>importance of maintaining tools, equipment and personal protective equipment</b> 3.5 Describe the <b>potential environmental damage</b> that could occur and how to respond appropriately 3.6 Explain the correct <b>methods for disposing of waste</b> 3.7 Explain the <b>records</b> required for management and legislative purposes and the importance of maintaining them.

<b>Range</b>
<b>Risk assessment</b> Five steps to risk assessment
<b>Emergency planning procedures</b>

State 5 emergency procedures

**Health and safety legislation and industry good practice**

2 points

Health and Safety at Work Act 1974

The Provision and Use of Work Equipment Regulations 1998 (PUWER)

State where to find Industry Good Practice information

Aboriginal Forestry Advisory Guides (AFAG)

State the safe working distances between operators during:

- Cross-cutting
- Felling

4 requirements

Lifting Operations and Lifting Equipment Regulations 1998 (LOLER)

3 requirements

Work at Height Regulations 2005

**importance of maintaining tools, equipment and personal protective equipment**

3 reasons

**Potential environmental damage**

2 occurrences

2 responses

**Methods for disposing of waste**

2 methods

**Records**

3 records

1 reason.

**Learning outcome**

The learner will:

4. Understand how to prepare for and agree emergency treework operations

**Assessment criteria**

The learner can:

- 4.1 Explain the **importance of responding** appropriately to the urgency of the emergency
- 4.2 Explain why it is **important to have vehicles and kit prepared** in anticipation of any emergency
- 4.3 Investigate where to **research advance warning of emergencies**, such as weather
- 4.4 Explain how to **deploy the workforce** efficiently and effectively
- 4.5 Explain how to identify the **presence and significance of utilities**

- 4.6 Explain **contingency planning** for different emergencies
- 4.7 Explain how to **secure sites for safe and effective working** including the correct location and positioning of warning signs and access controls
- 4.8 Explain how the **complexity of the situation can impact on the treework operations**
- 4.9 Explain how to **prioritise emergencies**.

<b>Range</b>
<p><b>importance of responding</b> 2 reasons</p>
<p><b>important to have vehicles and kit prepared</b> 3 reasons</p>
<p><b>Research advance warning of emergencies</b> 2 where</p>
<p><b>Deploy the workforce</b> 3 reasons</p>
<p><b>Presence and significance of utilities</b> 2 identify 2 significance</p>
<p><b>Contingency planning</b> 3 explained</p>
<p><b>Secure sites for safe and effective working</b> 2 reasons</p>
<p><b>Complexity of the situation can impact on the treework operations</b> 3 complexities</p>
<p><b>Prioritise emergencies</b> 2 reasons</p>





**Unit 510**                      **Prepare for and agree  
emergency tree work operations**  
Supporting information

**Guidance**

Simulation will not be acceptable where the unit is included in qualifications which verify competent performance. Please refer to Lantra's Assessment Strategy for further guidance.

<b>UAN:</b>	<b>F/504/3661</b>
<b>Level:</b>	Level 3
<b>Credit value:</b>	4
<b>GLH:</b>	26
<b>Relationship to NOS:</b>	This unit is linked to Horticulture NOS
<b>Endorsement by a sector or regulatory body:</b>	This unit is endorsed by Lantra, the Sector Skills Council for Land and Environment
<b>Aim:</b>	The aim and purpose of this unit is to provide the learner with the knowledge and skills to lay a hedge

<b>Learning outcome</b>
The learner will:
1. Be able to promote health and safety and industry good practice
<b>Assessment criteria</b>
The learner can:
1.1 Identify the <b>hazards and risks</b> associated with the working area and the proposed work
1.2 Carry out work in accordance with relevant legislation, industry good practice, any additional requirements and maintains health and safety
1.3 Use <b>tools, equipment and personal protective equipment (PPE)</b>
1.4 Carry out work to minimise environmental damage.

<b>Range</b>
<b>Hazards and risks</b> Complete an appropriate risk assessment
<b>Tools, equipment and personal protective equipment (PPE)</b> Maintain tools, equipment and personal protective equipment (PPE) safely.

<b>Learning outcome</b>
The learner will: 2. Be able to plan to lay a hedge
<b>Assessment criteria</b>
The learner can: 2.1 Identify the main purpose and species of the hedge 2.2 Determine the <b>style</b> in which the hedge laying will take place taking account of regional variances 2.3 Identify which hedgerow trees are to be retained and if any special protection measures exist 2.4 Estimate the <b>number of plants</b> required to restock the gaps.

<b>Range</b>
<b>Style</b> Check for the presence of utility cables and fencing
<b>Number of plants</b> Measure the length of the hedged to be laid and estimate materials required

<b>Learning outcome</b>
The learner will: 3. Be able to lay a hedge
<b>Assessment criteria</b>
The learner can: 3.1 Identify the direction in which the hedge will be laid and where laying will commence 3.2 Select pleachers to meet specification 3.3 <b>Cut pleachers</b> at the correct angle, maintaining viable hinges and reduce stumps appropriately 3.4 Lay pleachers to meet specification 3.5 Sharpen stakes as required 3.6 <b>Install stakes</b> at determined spacing in accordance with the style of hedging.

<b>Range</b>
<b>Cut pleachers</b> Remove dead wood and other unwanted materials Fill gaps as appropriate
<b>Install stakes</b>

Bind hedge, trim off stakes.

**Learning outcome**

The learner will:

4. Understand relevant health and safety legislation and industry good practice

**Assessment criteria**

The learner can:

- 4.1 Explain the importance of risk assessment
- 4.2 Summarise current health and safety legislation and industry good practice
- 4.3 Explain the importance of maintaining tools, equipment and personal protective equipment (PPE)
- 4.4 Describe the potential environmental damage that could occur and how to respond appropriately.

**Learning outcome**

The learner will:

5. Know how to lay a hedge

**Assessment criteria**

The learner can:

- 5.1 Explain the **reasons for laying hedges**
- 5.2 State the most appropriate **time of year** to lay hedges
- 5.3 Explain the effect of your work on **wildlife habitat**
- 5.4 Describe different hedgerow species and their characteristics
- 5.5 Explain the **different styles of hedge laying and regional variances.**

**Range**

**Reasons for laying hedges**

Biodiversity, stock proof, maintain landscape, etc.

**Time of year**

Depending on local climate and the effect of frost on the pleachers

**Wildlife habitat**

eg bird nesting season

**Different styles of hedge laying and regional variances**

The appropriate length and diameter of stems to use as pleachers types and sources of binders and stakes available.



## **Unit 511**            **Lay a hedge**

### Supporting information

#### **Guidance**

Simulation will not be acceptable where the unit is included in qualifications which verify competent performance. Please refer to Lantra's Assessment Strategy for further guidance.

<b>UAN:</b>	<b>F/504/3675</b>
<b>Level:</b>	Level 3
<b>Credit value:</b>	8
<b>GLH:</b>	52
<b>Relationship to NOS:</b>	This unit is linked to Trees and Timber NOS
<b>Endorsement by a sector or regulatory body:</b>	This unit is endorsed by Lantra, the Sector Skills Council for Land and Environment

<b>Learning outcome</b>
The learner will:
1. Be able to promote health and safety and industry good practice
<b>Assessment criteria</b>
The learner can:
1.1 Identify the <b>hazards and risks</b> associated with the working area and the proposed work
1.2 Carry out work in accordance with relevant <b>legislation, industry good practice and promotes health and safety</b>
1.3 Use <b>tools, equipment and personal protective equipment (PPE) safely</b>
1.4 Carry out work to minimise environmental damage.

<b>Range</b>
<b>Hazards and risks</b> Complete an appropriate risk assessment
<b>Legislation, industry good practice and promotes health and safety</b> Including animal health and welfare
<b>Tools, equipment and personal protective equipment (PPE) safely</b> Maintain tools, equipment and personal protective equipment (PPE).



<b>Learning outcome</b>
The learner will: 2. Be able to extract timber using a horse
<b>Assessment criteria</b>
The learner can: 2.1 Maintain access and extraction routes in a serviceable condition 2.2 <b>Extract wood products</b> effectively and efficiently using agreed extraction routes 2.3 Unload products 2.4 <b>Grade products</b> according to the specification 2.5 Accumulate products in agreed area to facilitate uplift and onward dispatch 2.6 Maintain the health and welfare of the horse throughout the activity.

<b>Range</b>
<b>Extract wood products</b> Position load and unload machinery effectively
<b>Grade products</b> Separate products in accordance with job specification.

<b>Learning outcome</b>
The learner will: 3. Understand relevant health and safety legislation and industry good practice
<b>Assessment criteria</b>
The learner can: 3.1 Explain the importance of risk assessment 3.2 Outline the emergency planning procedures relevant to the work area 3.3 Summarise current health and safety legislation and industry good practice 3.4 Explain the importance of maintaining tools, equipment and personal protective equipment (PPE) 3.5 Describe the potential environmental damage that could occur and how to respond appropriately.

<b>Learning outcome</b>
The learner will: 4. Understand the extraction of timber using a horse
<b>Assessment criteria</b>
The learner can: 4.1 Explain how to interpret product specifications and select produce into product categories during loading 4.2 Explain how the <b>slope limitations and maximum safe working load</b> impact on the capabilities and limitations of the horse 4.3 Explain the <b>implications</b> of terrain, ground conditions, season, weather, load and timber type/condition on planning access routes and driving the horse 4.4 State the effect of unbalanced loads on extraction 4.5 Explain methods of grading, stacking and handling products to meet specification/customer requirements 4.6 Explain the importance of monitoring and maintaining the health and welfare of the horse throughout.

<b>Range</b>
<b>Slope limitations and maximum safe working load</b> The need to regularly check the welfare of the horse
<b>Implications</b> How to select suitable extraction route

## **Unit 512                  Extract timber using a horse**

### **Supporting information**

#### **Guidance**

Simulation will not be acceptable where the unit is included in qualifications which verify competent performance. Please refer to Lantra's Assessment Strategy for further guidance.

<b>UAN:</b>	<b>K/504/0317</b>
<b>Level:</b>	Level 3
<b>Credit value:</b>	3
<b>GLH:</b>	19
<b>Relationship to NOS:</b>	This unit is linked to Trees and Timber NOS
<b>Endorsement by a sector or regulatory body:</b>	This unit is endorsed by Lantra, the Sector Skills Council for Land and Environment
<b>Aim:</b>	The aim and purpose of this unit is to provide the learner with the knowledge, skills and understanding to carry out aerial pruning of a tree

<b>Learning outcome</b>
The learner will:
1. Be able to promote health and safety and industry good practice
<b>Assessment criteria</b>
The learner can:
1.1 Identify the <b>hazards and risks</b> associated with the working area and the proposed work
1.2 Work in a way which promotes health and safety, is consistent with relevant legislation and industry good practice
1.3 Use and maintain tools, equipment and personal protective equipment (PPE)
1.4 Carry out work to <b>minimise environmental damage</b>
1.5 Dispose of waste safely in line with legislation.

<b>Range</b>
<b>Hazards and risks</b>
3 hazards and the associated risks with the working area
3 hazards and the associated risks with the proposed work
<b>Minimise environmental damage</b>
Inspect the working area for potential (negative) environmental damage
Record finding(s) and report as appropriate
Implement any required control measure(s).

<b>Learning outcome</b>
The learner will: 2. Be able to carry out aerial pruning of a tree
<b>Assessment criteria</b>
The learner can: 2.1 Perform a <b>hazard evaluation</b> and Work At Height assessment prior to carrying out the work 2.2 Use access and positioning methods appropriate to the assessed risk(s) 2.3 Inspect all access equipment to ensure it is safe and fit for use under manufacturers instructions and relevant legislation 2.4 Select an appropriate anchor point if climbing or appropriate position of Mobile Elevated Work Platform (MEWP) according to the work situation 2.5 Reassess the anchor point for climbing or positioning of Mobile Elevated Work Platform (MEWP) throughout the work 2.6 Apply pruning specification 2.7 <b>Carry out pruning operations</b> in accordance with industry good practice 2.8 Check all arisings are dropped/thrown into planned drop zone without compromising the access equipment or damage to the infrastructure.

<b>Range</b>
<b>Hazard evaluation</b> 6 hazards of the tree
<b>Carry out pruning operations</b> 1 x Crown reduction 1 x Crown thinning.

<b>Learning outcome</b>
The learner will: 3. Understand relevant health and safety legislation and industry good practice
<b>Assessment criteria</b>
The learner can: 3.1 Explain the importance of <b>risk assessment</b> 3.2 Outline the <b>emergency planning procedures</b> relevant to the work area 3.3 Summarise current <b>health and safety legislation and industry good practice</b> 3.4 Explain the importance of maintaining tools, equipment and personal protective equipment

- 3.5 Describe the potential environmental damage that could occur and how to respond appropriately
- 3.6 Explain the correct and appropriate methods for disposing of waste.

**Range**

**Risk assessment**

5 steps of risk assessment

**Emergency planning procedures**

5 emergency procedures

**Health and safety legislation and industry good practice**

Lifting Operations and Lifting Equipment Regulations 1998 (LOLER)

The Provision and Use of Work Equipment Regulations 1998 (PUWER)

Work at Height Regulations 2005

Arboricultural Forestry Advisory Guides (AFAG).

**Learning outcome**

The learner will:

- 4. Understand how to carry out aerial pruning of a tree

**Assessment criteria**

The learner can:

- 4.1 Explain **control measures** to be implemented relevant to the working area and proposed works
- 4.2 Explain how to evaluate the tree for hazards and the implications of the hazards when identified
- 4.3 Explain the importance of accurate and appropriate cuts when removing branch material
- 4.4 Explain how tree species, their condition and the time of year affect the work
- 4.5 Evaluate the advantages and disadvantages of pruning tools to the selected pruning operations
- 4.6 Explain the additional **precautions** that may be taken during re-pollarding of trees
- 4.7 Define pruning prescriptive terms and measurements
- 4.8 Explain measurement terms and how to apply them
- 4.9 Explain the basic principles of target pruning and the effect on tree pruning operations.

**Range**

**Control measures**

2 control measures

2 reasons (1 reason for each )  
1 advantage and 1 disadvantage of each tool  
Minimum of 2 tools to be selected

**Precautions**

2 precautions.

## **Unit 520                    Carry out aerial pruning of a tree**

### **Supporting information**

#### **Guidance**

The learner will undertake both crown reduction and crown thinning on a tree above 380mm Refer to Lantra SSC's Assessment Strategy for full details.



<b>UAN:</b>	L/504/0620
<b>Level:</b>	Level 3
<b>Credit value:</b>	4
<b>GLH:</b>	26
<b>Relationship to NOS:</b>	This unit is linked to Trees and Timber NOS
<b>Endorsement by a sector or regulatory body:</b>	This unit is endorsed by Lantra, the Sector Skills Council for Land and Environment
<b>Aim:</b>	The aim and purpose of this unit is to provide the learner with the knowledge and skills to sever uprooted or windblown trees using a chainsaw

<b>Learning outcome</b>
The learner will:
1. Be able to promote health and safety and industry good practice
<b>Assessment criteria</b>
The learner can:
1.1 Identify the <b>hazards and risks</b> associated with the working area and the proposed work
1.2 Use appropriate <b>tools, equipment and personal protective equipment (PPE)</b>
1.3 Work in a way which promotes health and safety and is consistent with relevant legislation and industry good practice
1.4 Carry out work to <b>minimise environmental damage</b>
1.5 Dispose of waste in line with legislation.

<b>Range</b>
<b>Hazards and risks</b>
3 hazards and the associated risks with the working area. 3 hazards and the associated risks with the proposed work.
<b>Tools, equipment and personal protective equipment (PPE)</b>
INDG145; INDG317; AFAG301; AFAG306; AFAG307
<b>Minimise environmental damage</b>
Inspect working area for potential (negative) environmental damage.

Record findings, and report as appropriate.  
Implement required control measures.

### Learning outcome

The learner will:

2. Be able to sever uprooted and windblown trees using a chainsaw

### Assessment criteria

The learner can:

- 2.1 Carry out pre-start checks and setting of the machine for use
- 2.2 Plan and agree a **system of work**
- 2.3 Prepare site and establish escape route
- 2.4 Demonstrate **safe starting of the chainsaw**
- 2.5 **Prepare stems**
- 2.6 **Sever stems** under significant tension and compression
- 2.7 **Secure the root plate** with a winch
- 2.8 **Sever the root plates** using a recognised severing method appropriate to the tree size and condition
- 2.9 Prepare **broken and partially windblown trees** using appropriate methods and aid tools for felling
- 2.10 **Fell broken trees** using appropriate methods and aid tools
- 2.11 **Fell partially windblown trees** using appropriate methods and aid tools
- 2.12 **Turn tree** and remove under branches using appropriate method and aid tools
- 2.13 Cross-cut timber to length in accordance with the specification
- 2.14 **Stack produce** for subsequent operations using appropriate aids and tools
- 2.15 Check that trees, timber and root plates are in a safe, appropriate position and condition
- 2.16 Clean and tidy working area.

### Range

#### Pre-start checks and setting of the machine

Operator's handbook; INDG317

#### System of work

Include:

- Relevant briefings to all operators on site.
- AFAG306.
- AFAG802.

#### Safe starting of the chainsaw

Include operational checks.

- INDG317
- AFAG301.

**Prepare stems**

Appropriate to tree position, size, condition and species.

May include removing:

- Branches.
- Climbing vegetation and scrub.
- Soil and gravel.
- Other obstructions.

**Sever stems**

Minimum 2, maximum 4 stems under top/bottom tension/compression.

Minimum 1, maximum 2 stem under side tension/compression.

**Secure the root plate**

Learner to demonstrate on a root plate overhanging work position (where not available simulation is acceptable).

**Sever the root plates**

Minimum 3, maximum 6

1 root plate must be secured with a winch

1 tree must include reduction cuts on a stem above guide bar length.

AFAG306

**Broken and partially windblown trees**

Appropriate to the tree condition and the specification for the site.

May include:

- Brushing lower branches.
- Removing climbing vegetation.
- Removing buttresses.
- Other obstructions.

Broken trees as referred to in AFAG306. Other scenarios and techniques are likely to be encountered.

**Fell broken trees**

Minimum 2; maximum 4

Appropriate to the tree form, condition and selected felling technique.

Broken trees as referred to in AFAG306. Other scenarios and techniques are likely to be encountered.

It is acceptable for the assessor to prepare trees for assessment.

**Fell partially windblown trees**

Minimum 2; maximum 4

Appropriate to the tree form, condition and selected felling technique.

A learner must not put themselves at risk when standing on a partially uprooted plate.

**Turn tree**

INDG145; AFAG303 and AFAG307

**Stack produce**

Stacking must be tidy.

INDG145.

AFAG304.

**Learning outcome**

The learner will:

3. Understand relevant health and safety legislation and industry good practice

**Assessment criteria**

The learner can:

- 3.1 Explain the **risk assessment process**
- 3.2 Outline the **emergency planning procedures** relevant to the work area
- 3.3 Summarise current **health and safety legislation and industry good practice**
- 3.4 Explain the **importance of maintaining tools, equipment and personal protective equipment**
- 3.5 Describe the potential **environmental damage** that could occur and how to respond appropriately
- 3.6 Explain **methods for disposing of waste**.

**Range**

**Risk assessment process**

Five steps to risk assessment.

Provide an example of 3 control measures from the hazards/risks identified.

**Emergency planning procedures**

AFAG802 – paragraph 16:

5 emergency planning procedures

**Current health and safety legislation and industry good practice**

State 2 points from each:

Health and Safety at Work Act 1974;

Provision and Use of Work Equipment Regulations 1998 (PUWER 98)

Manual Handling Operations Regulations 1992

Lifting Operations and Lifting Equipment Regulations 1998 (LOLER)

1 reason:

Arboriculture Forestry Advisory Group (AFAG)

Use of warning signs to be included.

State the safe working distances between operators during felling, cross-cutting and using machinery.

**importance of maintaining tools, equipment and personal protective equipment**

3 reasons.

**Environmental damage**

4 examples of environmental damage and appropriate response.

**Methods for disposing of waste**

State 3 methods.

**Learning outcome**

The learner will:

4. Understand how to sever uprooted or windblown trees using a chainsaw

**Assessment criteria**

The learner can:

- 4.1 Explain top, bottom and side tension and compression in timber
- 4.2 Explain the **risks involved and precautions** to be taken by the chainsaw operator when cutting timber under high tension
- 4.3 State when winch restraint of a root plate or stem is necessary
- 4.4 Describe how to set up winch for restraint of side tension or to prevent uncontrolled movement of timber
- 4.5 Explain why **severing cuts** may be made a distance of a 'long log' from the root plate and the associated hazards
- 4.6 Describe the **alternative methods** that can be used to sever timber under very severe tension
- 4.7 Describe how to **make root plates safe after severing**
- 4.8 Explain the **factors** to consider and additional safety precautions when using winches
- 4.9 Describe how to maintain **safety on site** when machinery is present
- 4.10 Describe the **situations** where a banksman would be used and the means of communication with the operator
- 4.11 Describe the **methods of severing uprooted trees**, under and over guide bar length in diameter
- 4.12 Describe how to **sever partly uprooted or windblown trees**
- 4.13 Describe how to **fell broken trees** with:
  - hanging tops
  - partially broken tops which are in contact with the ground
- 4.14 Explain the **advantages and methods** of removing a broken top prior to felling.

**Range****Risks involved and precautions**

2 risks and their precautionary measures.

**Severing cuts**

2 benefits

2 hazards

**Alternative methods**

State 2 methods

**make root plates safe after severing**

Capacity of the winch.

Security of anchor points consideration of multiplication of forces on anchor points with eg double rigging or offset (diverted) pulling.

Compatibility of components.

**Factors**

Awareness of danger zones.

Clear communication established.

Roles and responsibilities understood

**Safety on site**

Maintain specified risk zone(s).

Clear communication with operator.

**Situations**

Describe 2 situations and 2 means of communication.

**Methods of severing uprooted trees**

1 method for under and 1 method for over guide bar length

**Sever partly uprooted or windblown trees**

Learner to state 2 risks associated with standing on a partially uprooted plate.

**Fell broken trees**

Techniques safe and appropriate to the tree/site.

AFAG306.

**Advantages and methods**

2 advantages.

2 methods.

# Unit 525 Sever uprooted or windblown trees using a chainsaw

## Supporting information

### Guidance

Minimum of 6 interwoven windblown trees with a diameter between 300mm-560mm one of which must be at least 380mm.

Minimum 4 broken trees plus 4 partially windblown trees with a diameter between 380mm-560mm.

The trees must have been windblown within the last 12 months (if not available simulation is acceptable).

- Leaning forward - root plate
- Leaning backward - root plate

Refer to Lantra SSCs assessment strategy for further details

<b>UAN:</b>	<b>M/600/1237</b>
<b>Level:</b>	Level 3
<b>Credit value:</b>	6
<b>GLH:</b>	39
<b>Relationship to NOS:</b>	This unit is linked to Trees and Timber NOS
<b>Endorsement by a sector or regulatory body:</b>	This unit is endorsed by Lantra, the Sector Skills Council for Land and Environment

<b>Learning outcome</b>
The learner will:
1. Be able to transport and store dead deer
<b>Assessment criteria</b>
The learner can:
1.1 Establish preparation and storage areas in an hygienic condition suitable for receiving deer carcasses
1.2 Transport carcass in an hygienic manner to maintain its quality
1.3 Transport and store deer according to legal requirements.

<b>Learning outcome</b>
The learner will:
2. Be to able prepare and inspect dead deer
<b>Assessment criteria</b>
The learner can:
2.1 Ensure tools and equipment are ready for use
2.2 Bleed and gralloch carcass hygienically and efficiently
2.3 Identify status of deer carcass
2.4 Dress deer carcass by removing:
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• head</li> <li>• feet</li> <li>• viscera</li> <li>• reproductive organs</li> </ul>
2.5 Inspect carcass, organs and lymph sites for normality according to legal requirements
2.6 Take appropriate action when carcass abnormality is identified, according to legal requirements



- |   |
|---|
| 2.7 Clean and store tools and equipment after use |
| 2.8 Prepare individual carcass declarations.      |

<b>Learning outcome</b>
-------------------------

The learner will:
-------------------

- |   |
|---|
| 3. Be able to promote health and safety and environmental good practice |
|---|

<b>Assessment criteria</b>
----------------------------

The learner can:
------------------

- |  |
|--|
| 3.1 Work in a way which promotes health and safety, is consistent with relevant legislation, codes of practice and any additional requirements |
| 3.2 Manage and dispose of waste in accordance with legislative requirements and codes of practice.   |

<b>Learning outcome</b>
-------------------------

The learner will:
-------------------

- |   |
|---|
| 4. Be able to maintain accurate records |
|---|

<b>Assessment criteria</b>
----------------------------

The learner can:
------------------

- |  |
|--|
| 4.1 Maintain accurate carcass records according to legal requirements. |
|--|

<b>Learning outcome</b>
-------------------------

The learner will:
-------------------

- |  |
|--|
| 5. Understand how to transport and store dead deer |
|--|

<b>Assessment criteria</b>
----------------------------

The learner can:
------------------

- |   |
|---|
| 5.1 Explain how incorrect handling practices can damage game meat                                 |
| 5.2 Describe the proper techniques to be used to handle, transport and store large game carcasses |
| 5.3 Outline industry codes of practice controlling the transport and storage of dead deer.        |

<b>Learning outcome</b>
-------------------------

The learner will:
-------------------

- |   |
|---|
| 6. Understand how to prepare and inspect dead deer in preparation for human consumption |
|---|

<b>Assessment criteria</b>
----------------------------

The learner can:
------------------

- |  |
|--|
| 6.1 Describe how to identify status of deer in terms of: |
| • sex  |
| • weight   |
| • reproductive state                                     |

	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• age class</li> <li>• condition</li> </ul>
6.2	Explain how to inspect deer carcasses to establish if condition is acceptable to enter food chain, including smell and appearance of deer carcasses, organs and lymph sites
6.3	Describe the quality requirements for game entering the food chain including permitted levels of flesh damage
6.4	Describe the proper techniques used to bleed, gralloch and eviscerate deer carcasses
6.5	Outline the industry codes of practice controlling the preparation of deer carcasses
6.6	Outline the legal requirements controlling the design and construction of game transport and larder facilities and the tools and equipment used in the preparation of game
6.7	Specify the action to take if carcass abnormalities are identified.

<b>Learning outcome</b>	
The learner will:	
7.	Understand relevant health and safety legislation and environmental good practice
<b>Assessment criteria</b>	
The learner can:	
7.1	Summarise current health and safety legislation, codes of practice and any additional requirements
7.2	Explain the principles of basic hygiene as it applies to the handling of deer carcasses
7.3	Explain the principles of HACCP as they apply to the supply of game carcasses for human consumption
7.4	Specify individual responsibilities under the current food hygiene regulations
7.5	Describe how environmental damage can be minimised during stalking and culling
7.6	Describe the correct methods for disposing of organic and inorganic waste.

<b>Learning outcome</b>	
The learner will:	
8.	Know how to maintain accurate records
<b>Assessment criteria</b>	
The learner can:	
8.1	Explain the reason for keeping accurate, up-to-date cull records in respect to: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• carcass details</li> <li>• culling details</li> </ul>

- 8.2 Summarise the legal requirements that control the maintenance of cull records
- 8.3 Outline the legal requirements controlling record keeping, labelling and traceability for game meat entering the food chain
- 8.4 Describe the individual declaration from the competent person to accompany each carcass to the game handling establishment.

## **Unit 530            Prepare deer for human                                  consumption**

### **Supporting information**

#### **Guidance**

Simulation will not be acceptable where the unit is included in qualifications which verify competent performance. Please refer to Lantra's Assessment Strategy for further guidance.

<b>UAN:</b>	T/504/0322
<b>Level:</b>	Level 3
<b>Credit value:</b>	3
<b>GLH:</b>	20
<b>Relationship to NOS:</b>	This unit is linked to Trees and Timber NOS
<b>Endorsement by a sector or regulatory body:</b>	This unit is endorsed by Lantra, the Sector Skills Council for Land and Environment
<b>Aim:</b>	The aim and purpose of this unit is to provide the learner with the knowledge, skills and understanding to carry out an aerial rescue from a tree.

<b>Learning outcome</b>
The learner will:
1. Be able to promote health and safety and industry good practice
<b>Assessment criteria</b>
The learner can:
1.1 identify the <b>hazards and risks</b> associated with the working area and the proposed work
1.2 work in a way which promotes health and safety, is consistent with relevant legislation and industry good practice
1.3 use access and tree climbing equipment and personal protective equipment (PPE)

<b>Range</b>
<b>Hazards and risks</b>
3 hazards and the associated risks with the working area.
3 hazards and the associated risks with the proposed work.

<b>Learning outcome</b>
The learner will: 2. Be able to carry out aerial rescue operations
<b>Assessment criteria</b>
The learner can: 2.1 perform a <b>hazard evaluation</b> of the tree and Work at Height assessment prior to commencing the work 2.2 inspect access equipment to ensure it is safe and fit for use under manufacturer's instructions and relevant legislation 2.3 use access and positioning methods appropriate to the assessed risks 2.4 identify the <b>rescue technique</b> appropriate to the nature of the incident 2.5 prepare a rescue plan 2.6 implement the rescue plan 2.7 use appropriate positioning techniques in the tree 2.8 communicate appropriately throughout.

<b>Range</b>
<b>Hazard evaluation</b> 6 hazards of the tree
<b>Rescue technique</b> Must do both: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Rope not long enough to descend</li> <li>• Pole/spike rescue</li> </ul> The casualty must be at least 5 metres from the ground

<b>Learning outcome</b>
The learner will: 3. Understand relevant health and safety legislation and industry good practice
<b>Assessment criteria</b>
The learner can: 3.1 explain the <b>risk assessment process</b> 3.2 outline the <b>emergency planning procedures</b> relevant to the work area 3.3 summarise current <b>health and safety legislation and industry good practice</b>

3.4 explain the **importance of inspecting equipment** following an aerial rescue

**Range**

**Risk assessment process**

Five steps to risk assessment

**Emergency planning procedures**

State 5 emergency procedures

**Health and safety legislation and industry good practice**

Lifting Operations and Lifting Equipment Regulations 1998 (LOLER)

The Provision and Use of Work Equipment Regulations 1998 (PUWER)

Work at Height Regulations 2005

Aboricultural Forestry Advisory Guides (AFAG)

**importance of inspecting equipment**

2 reasons

**Learning outcome**

The learner will:

4. Understand how to carry out aerial rescue operations

**Assessment criteria**

The learner can:

4.1 explain when it would be appropriate to contact the emergency services

4.2 explain how to report the incident in line with organisational requirements

4.3 explain the key elements of a rescue plan prior to starting work

4.4 describe **different rescue methods**

4.5 describe when **aerial rescue by climbing would not be appropriate**

4.6 explain how to carry out a mobile elevated work platform (MEWP) rescue

4.7 explain the implications on a MEWP's safe working load limit during aerial rescue

4.8 explain how species, condition of trees and time of year affect rescues

**Range**

**Different rescue methods**

2 additional rescue methods to those demonstrated:

- rope long enough,
- rope too short/damaged,
- belayed
- pole/spike rescue
- Mobile Elevated Work Platforms MEWP.

**Aerial rescue by climbing would not be appropriate**

2 reasons.



## **Unit 541**            **Carry out aerial rescue operations**

### Supporting information

#### **Guidance**

Simulation will not be acceptable where the unit is included in qualifications which verify competent performance. Please refer to Lantra's Assessment Strategy for further guidance.

<b>UAN:</b>	Y/600/9669
<b>Level:</b>	Level 3
<b>Credit value:</b>	5
<b>GLH:</b>	25
<b>Relationship to NOS:</b>	This unit is linked to Trees and Timber NOS
<b>Endorsement by a sector or regulatory body:</b>	This unit is endorsed by Lantra, the Sector Skills Council for Land and Environment

<b>Learning outcome</b>
The learner will:
1. Be able to plan work for a team
<b>Assessment criteria</b>
The learner can:
1.1 agree team objectives with own manager
1.2 develop a plan for a team to meet agreed objectives, taking into account capacity and capabilities of the team

<b>Learning outcome</b>
The learner will:
2. Be able to allocate work across a team.
<b>Assessment criteria</b>
The learner can:
2.1 discuss team plans with a team
2.2 agree work allocation and SMART (Specific, Measurable, Achievable, Realistic and Time-bound) objectives with team members
2.3 agree standard of work required by team.

<b>Learning outcome</b>
The learner will:
3. Be able to manage team members to achieve team objectives
<b>Assessment criteria</b>
The learner can:
3.1 support all team members in order to achieve team objectives.

<b>Learning outcome</b>
The learner will: 4. Be able to monitor and evaluate the performance of team members
<b>Assessment criteria</b>
The learner can: 4.1 assess team members' work against agreed standards and objectives 4.2 identify and monitor conflict within a team 4.3 identify causes for team members not meeting team objectives.

<b>Learning outcome</b>
The learner will: 5. Be able to improve the performance of a team
<b>Assessment criteria</b>
The learner can: 5.1 identify ways of improving team performance 5.2 provide constructive feedback to team members to improve their performance 5.3 implement identified ways of improving team performance.

## **Unit 547**            **Plan, allocate and monitor work of a team**

### Supporting information

#### **Guidance**

Simulation will not be acceptable where the unit is included in qualifications which verify competent performance. Please refer to Lantra's Assessment Strategy for further guidance.



## Appendix 1 Relationships to other qualifications

### Links to other qualifications

Mapping is provided as guidance and suggests areas of commonality between the qualifications. It does not imply that candidates completing units in one qualification have automatically covered all of the content of another.

Centres are responsible for checking the different requirements of all qualifications they are delivering and ensuring that candidates meet requirements of all units/qualifications.

### Literacy, language, numeracy and ICT skills development

These qualifications can develop skills that can be used in the following qualifications:

- Functional Skills (England) – see [www.cityandguilds.com/functionalskills](http://www.cityandguilds.com/functionalskills)
- Essential Skills (Northern Ireland) – see [www.cityandguilds.com/essentialskillsni](http://www.cityandguilds.com/essentialskillsni)
- Essential Skills Wales – see [www.cityandguilds.com/esw](http://www.cityandguilds.com/esw)



## Appendix 2 Sources of general information

The following documents contain essential information for centres delivering City & Guilds qualifications. They should be referred to in conjunction with this handbook. To download the documents and to find other useful documents, go to the **Centres and Training Providers homepage** on [www.cityandguilds.com](http://www.cityandguilds.com).

***Centre Manual - Supporting Customer Excellence*** contains detailed information about the processes which must be followed and requirements which must be met for a centre to achieve 'approved centre' status, or to offer a particular qualification, as well as updates and good practice exemplars for City & Guilds assessment and policy issues. Specifically, the document includes sections on:

- The centre and qualification approval process
- Assessment, internal quality assurance and examination roles at the centre
- Registration and certification of candidates
- Non-compliance
- Complaints and appeals
- Equal opportunities
- Data protection
- Management systems
- Maintaining records
- Assessment
- Internal quality assurance
- External quality assurance.

***Our Quality Assurance Requirements*** encompasses all of the relevant requirements of key regulatory documents such as:

- Regulatory Arrangements for the Qualifications and Credit Framework (2008)
- SQA Awarding Body Criteria (2007)
- NVQ Code of Practice (2006)

and sets out the criteria that centres should adhere to pre and post centre and qualification approval.

***Access to Assessment & Qualifications*** provides full details of the arrangements that may be made to facilitate access to assessments and qualifications for candidates who are eligible for adjustments in assessment.

The **centre homepage** section of the City & Guilds website also contains useful information such on such things as:

- **Walled Garden:** how to register and certificate candidates on line
- **Events:** dates and information on the latest Centre events
- **Online assessment:** how to register for GOLA/e-volve assessments.

City & Guilds  
Believe you can



[www.cityandguilds.com](http://www.cityandguilds.com)



## Useful contacts

<b>UK learners</b> <b>General qualification information</b>	<b>T: +44 (0)844 543 0033</b> <b>E: learnersupport@cityandguilds.com</b>
<b>Centres</b> Exam entries, Certificates, Registrations/enrolment, Invoices, Missing or late exam materials, Nominal roll reports, Results	T: +44 (0)844 543 0000 F: +44 (0)20 7294 2413 E: <b>centresupport@cityandguilds.com</b>
<b>Single subject qualifications</b> Exam entries, Results, Certification, Missing or late exam materials, Incorrect exam papers, Forms request (BB, results entry), Exam date and time change	T: +44 (0)844 543 0000 F: +44 (0)20 7294 2413 F: +44 (0)20 7294 2404 (BB forms) E: <b>singlesubjects@cityandguilds.com</b>
<b>International awards</b> Results, Entries, Enrolments, Invoices, Missing or late exam materials, Nominal roll reports	T: +44 (0)844 543 0000 F: +44 (0)20 7294 2413 E: <b>intops@cityandguilds.com</b>
<b>Walled Garden</b> Re-issue of password or username, Technical problems, Entries, Results, e-assessment, Navigation, User/menu option, Problems	T: +44 (0)844 543 0000 F: +44 (0)20 7294 2413 E: <b>walledgarden@cityandguilds.com</b>
<b>Employer</b> Employer solutions, Mapping, Accreditation, Development Skills, Consultancy	T: +44 (0)121 503 8993 E: <b>business@cityandguilds.com</b>
<b>Publications</b> Logbooks, Centre documents, Forms, Free literature	T: +44 (0)844 543 0000 F: +44 (0)20 7294 2413

Every effort has been made to ensure that the information contained in this publication is true and correct at the time of going to press. However, City & Guilds' products and services are subject to continuous development and improvement and the right is reserved to change products and services from time to time. City & Guilds cannot accept liability for loss or damage arising from the use of information in this publication.

If you have a complaint, or any suggestions for improvement about any of the services that we provide, email: **feedbackandcomplaints@cityandguilds.com**

## **About City & Guilds**

As the UK's leading vocational education organisation, City & Guilds is leading the talent revolution by inspiring people to unlock their potential and develop their skills. We offer over 500 qualifications across 28 industries through 8500 centres worldwide and award around two million certificates every year. City & Guilds is recognised and respected by employers across the world as a sign of quality and exceptional training.

## **City & Guilds Group**

The City & Guilds Group operates from three major hubs: London (servicing Europe, the Caribbean and Americas), Johannesburg (servicing Africa), and Singapore (servicing Asia, Australia and New Zealand). The Group also includes the Institute of Leadership & Management (management and leadership qualifications), City & Guilds Land Based Services (land-based qualifications), the Centre for Skills Development (CSD works to improve the policy and practice of vocational education and training worldwide) and Learning Assistant (an online e-portfolio).

## **Copyright**

The content of this document is, unless otherwise indicated, © The City and Guilds of London Institute and may not be copied, reproduced or distributed without prior written consent. However, approved City & Guilds centres and candidates studying for City & Guilds qualifications may photocopy this document free of charge and/or include a PDF version of it on centre intranets on the following conditions:

- centre staff may copy the material only for the purpose of teaching candidates working towards a City & Guilds qualification, or for internal administration purposes
- candidates may copy the material only for their own use when working towards a City & Guilds qualification

The *Standard Copying Conditions* (see the City & Guilds website) also apply.

Please note: National Occupational Standards are not © The City and Guilds of London Institute. Please check the conditions upon which they may be copied with the relevant Sector Skills Council.

Published by City & Guilds, a registered charity established to promote education and training

## **City & Guilds**

**1 Giltspur Street**

**London EC1A 9DD**

**T +44 (0)844 543 0000**

**F +44 (0)20 7294 2413**

**[www.cityandguilds.com](http://www.cityandguilds.com)**